THE DEVELOPMENT OF AN ACADEMICALLY-BASED ENTERTAINMENT-EDUCATION (ABEE) MODEL: CO-OPTING BEHAVIORAL CHANGE EFFICACY OF ENTERTAINMENT-EDUCATION FOR ACADEMIC LEARNING TARGETING THE SOCIETAL LANDSCAPE OF U.S. GEOGRAPHIC ILLITERACY

A Dissertation

by

MICHELLE LOUISE SIMMS

Submitted to the Office of Graduate Studies of Texas A&M University in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

May 2011

Major Subject: Curriculum and Instruction

Copyright 2011 Michelle Louise Simms
THE DEVELOPMENT OF AN ACADEMICALLY-BASED ENTERTAINMENT-EDUCATION (ABEE) MODEL: CO-OPTING BEHAVIORAL CHANGE EFFICACY OF ENTERTAINMENT-EDUCATION FOR ACADEMIC LEARNING TARGETING THE SOCIETAL LANDSCAPE OF U.S. GEOGRAPHIC ILLITERACY

A Dissertation

by

MICHELLE LOUISE SIMMS

Submitted to the Office of Graduate Studies of Texas A&M University in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

Approved by:

Chair of Committee, B. Stephen Carpenter, II
Committee Members, Carol LaFayette
                       Tim McLaughlin
                       Erin McTigue
Head of Department, Dennie Smith

May 2011

Major Subject: Curriculum and Instruction
ABSTRACT


(May 2011)

Michelle Louise Simms, B.S.; M.Ag.; M.S.,
Texas A&M University
Chair of Advisory Committee: Dr. B. Stephen Carpenter, II

Educators and scholars continue to lament United States citizens’ geographic illiteracy and are calling on Congress to address the crisis. However, despite recent public attention, a lack of national commitment to teaching geography in all public school grade levels persists. Therefore, non-formal educational avenues need to be pursued to address this crisis. One such avenue may be Entertainment-Education (E-E). E-E interventions have been used outside of the U.S. to impact social problems and detrimental behaviors by presenting positive role models in entertainment products designed to stimulate changes in viewers’ behavior. For example, soap operas promote condoms use as a HIV prevention strategy (Tanzania), model culturally-sensitive actions to stop domestic violence (South Africa), and promote infant oral-rehydration therapy (Egypt).
This study posits academic learning can be facilitated in a similar fashion as behavior change through an E-E methodology. Beginning with an examination of the E-E field by indexing E-E literature found in scholarly publication databases, this study demonstrates the 30-year health message focus of the field and presents a catalogue of E-E interventions cross-referenced by name and target country. The combination of these two products illuminates how U.S. audiences and non-behaviorally based outcomes have not been targeted, leaving academic subject learning as an area into which E-E can expand.

The expansion of E-E methodology into geography education (or any other subject) requires understanding of how academic concepts interact with the structure of fictional narratives. Using a grounded theory approach, this study analyzes the U.S. television series NUMB3RS, which uses math to drive the story (as opposed to simply serving as context), to develop an Academically-Based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) model. ABEE is then applied to Google Earth, exploring how to leverage non-linear and visually dependent narratives as well as develop user-driven learning experiences.

The implications of research presented here and through future refinement of the ABEE model may potentially (1) develop educative entertainment products supporting formal education and (2) bring geographic knowledge into the realm of popular culture through mass media, thereby impacting geographic literacy at a societal level in the U.S.

DEDICATION

I heard “no” but kept going. 
Revelations 3:7

Until “no” became my fuel. 
James 1: 2-4

Those who told me “yes” ignited the fuel, 
Proverbs 17:17; 27:9

Revealing the plan of the One who plants 
dreams and makes them come true. 
Philippians 1:21
I would like to thank God for patiently waiting for me to develop the courage to follow what He placed in my heart. I am evidence of His unchanging nature. The simple prayer of Jabez (1 Chronicles 4:10) became my prayer and oh how He has blessed me!

I am grateful for my graduate committee and especially my committee chair. Steve, Carol, Erin, and Tim: Thank you for the latitude to wrestle with my big ideas and for providing an academic home allowing them to incubate and grow freely.

I am also grateful to all of my course professors, my “sounding boards” Dr. Lynn Burlbaw and Dr. Arvind Singhl, and my classmates. I learned so much from all of you.

I especially want to thank the incredible librarian crew at Evans Library. Whoever invented the “Get It For Me” system and the web interface with Google Scholar is a genius!

To my awesome former coworkers and bosses in the Office of Graduate Studies, thank you for everything! Bob and Julie, you rock!

A special thank you also goes to Dr. Dennie Smith for providing an opportunity to work on a research topic close to my own research interests as well as to the Association of Former Students, Department of Teaching, Learning, & Culture (TLAC), and the Office of Graduate Studies for the scholarships and grants funding my research and conference travel.

I would also like to acknowledge the writers and staff of the television show NUMB3RS whose generosity with their time made the heart of my dissertation possible.
For their efforts in helping me navigate the personnel and legal aspects of securing publication permission for excerpts from television show scripts, a special thank you goes to Cheryl Heuton, Nicolas Falacci, Robert Port, Michael Cano, Adam Huss (Writers Guild of America Foundation), Laurie Espinosa (WGA legal department), Karen Howard (CBS legal department), and Alan Hergott (Bloom Hergott Diemer Rosenthal LaViolette Feldman Schenkman & Goodman, LLP). I am also so grateful to the show’s writers who generously gave me their time to discuss my research. In compliance with my IRB protocol approved by the Office of Research Compliance, I cannot name them specifically but please know how much I appreciate your time and interest in my research!

I cannot thank my friends and family enough for encouragement, laughter, and the occasional strong shoulders to lean on. Taylor Ainsworth, Serena Aldrich, Irving Brown, Doreen Coffey, Hailey Daehnke, Laura Davis, Gina Lane, Nikki Williams, Julie Wilson, Robert Wilson, and Melanie Woods: I cannot thank you enough for the fun times, great conversations, and much needed distractions!

And last but not least, thanks to my officemates Rhonda Goolsby and Yetunde Zannou for putting up with the controlled chaos residing on my desk and the thoughts-in-progress on the chalkboard. We made it through!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABEE</td>
<td>Academically-based Entertainment-Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>Google Earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-E</td>
<td>Entertainment-Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDPP</td>
<td>Math-Driven Plot Point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS</td>
<td>Public Broadcasting System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP</td>
<td>Plot Point</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABSTRACT</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DEDICATION</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS</td>
<td>vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOMENCLATURE</td>
<td>viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TABLE OF CONTENTS</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LIST OF FIGURES</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LIST OF TABLES</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Problem Statement</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purpose of This Study</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form and content of the dissertation</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cultural Acceptance of Geographic Illiteracy?</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>MANUSCRIPT #1: LITERATURE INDEX</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Methodology</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Results and Discussion</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conclusions</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index of Entertainment-Education Publications</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>MANUSCRIPT # 2: DEVELOPMENT OF THE ABEE MODEL....</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Background of Entertainment-Education and Use in Geography</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-formal environment supporting formal education</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Entertainment-Education (E-E)</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Developing the Academically-Based Entertainment-Education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ABEE) Model</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similar yet different: E-E and ABEE</td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABEE model development</td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learning using a narrative structure</td>
<td>144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanisms for learning</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMB3RS television series</td>
<td>150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dramatic story structure</td>
<td>151</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Materials and Methods</td>
<td>152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results</td>
<td>162</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion</td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word picture with a visual narrative—the “Audience Vision”</td>
<td>166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word picture presented through a physical demonstration</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word picture presented through natural dialogue</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABEE model summary</td>
<td>169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV MANUSCRIPT # 3: ABEE AND NON-LINEAR MEDIA</td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography education in the new millennium</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New media</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose and Research Question</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language of film</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectacle and baroque</td>
<td>182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language of Google Earth</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-linear narrative</td>
<td>193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The dual nature of Google Earth</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translating ABEE for Non-Linear Environments</td>
<td>196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easter eggs and virtual surprises</td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperdrama</td>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABEE in Google Earth – Model in Motion</td>
<td>202</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Easter eggs might look in Google Earth</td>
<td>205</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion</td>
<td>209</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V CONCLUSIONS</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implications for Geography Education</td>
<td>212</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implications Beyond Geography Education</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Research</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# LIST OF FIGURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-1</td>
<td>Proportion of Literature by Publication</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-2</td>
<td>Frequency of Citation of Entertainment-Education Publications</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>Frequency of Entertainment-Education Publications by Year</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>Dissertation and Thesis Publications by Year</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-5</td>
<td>Proportion of Entertainment-Education Publications by Tone</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-6</td>
<td>Frequency of Publications by Research Approach</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-7</td>
<td>Proportion of Interventions by Genre</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-8</td>
<td>Messages in Entertainment-Education and Short-Run Interventions</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-1</td>
<td>Annotated Scene Featuring a Math-Driven Plot Point</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-2</td>
<td>Episodes with Math Driven Plot Points (MDPPs)</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-3</td>
<td>Annotated Scene Featuring an “Audience Vision”</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Annotated Example of a “Charlie Vision”</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>Google Earth Interface</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-2</td>
<td>Vermeer’s <em>The Geographer</em></td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-3</td>
<td>Enhanced Imagery from Google Earth</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-4</td>
<td>Placemarks in Google Earth</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td>Example of ABEE Components</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-1</td>
<td>Scholarly Databases Searched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-2</td>
<td>Filters Used for ProQuest and Google Scholar Databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>Bibliography of Entertainment-Education Publications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-4A</td>
<td>Entertainment-Education Interventions Alphabetized by Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-4B</td>
<td>Short Run Entertainment-Education Storylines in Existing TV Programs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-1</td>
<td>Episodes Selected for Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-2</td>
<td>List of Math or Logic Concepts Paired with a Word Picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>Comparison of Characteristics of Film, New Media, and Google Earth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER I
INTRODUCTION

If casual proclamations such as “I am terrible with directions” or “I don’t remember anything I learned about geography when I was in school” are any indication, geographic illiteracy in the United States does not appear to be considered a liability. Take for example popular talk show host Kelly Ripa’s self-deprecating story told to her Live with Regis and Kelly television audience about not being able to assist her children with accurate placement of cities on a world map in their home (Dodai, 2009). Evidence of a national crisis is suggested by a recent study reported by National Geographic Society which found “young adults in the United States fail to understand the world and their place in it” (Roach, 2006). This crisis was recognized by the U.S. Congress through inclusion of the discipline in the No Child Left Behind Act (107th Congress, 2002), however, geography was the only core subject not funded by the legislation. Yet, even if geography was taught as an independent subject in all grades of U.S. classroom, more educational effort and support may be needed to arrest or reverse the growth rate of geographic illiteracy.

With the high rate of entertainment media consumption by Americans, popular culture may be a candidate for delivering educational content as a form of non-formal education, that is to say through learning experiences situated outside of the classroom (M. K. Smith, 2001). For example, a strategy for using popular television programs to

---

This dissertation follows the style of Educational Researcher.
communicate health messages has been used by researchers and organizations such as the Hollywood, Health & Society at the University of Southern California (Glik, et al., 1998; A. Singhal, M. Cody, E. Rogers, & M. Sabido, 2004a; The Norman Lear Center, 2010). On a broader scale, this strategy has been used more extensively in developing countries through soap operas and radio dramas specifically designed to teach viewers how to mitigate pressing social issues. This strategy of embedding educational content into entertainment is called “Entertainment-Education” (Singhal, Cody, et al., 2004a) and has proven to be an effective tool in changing social behaviors in cultures around the world. Entertainment-Education (E-E) differs from traditional educational programming found in the U.S. such as what one finds on Public Broadcasting System (PBS) television network which features programs that are primarily instructional, biographical/documentary, or some variation thereof. For example, the long-running series *New Yankee Workshop* featured host Norm Abrams building a carpentry project step-by-step. In another archetypal example, filmmaker Ken Burns follows the historical path of the U.S. Civil War, the technological and historical context of the building of New York’s iconic Brooklyn Bridge, or the legacy of American architect Frank Lloyd Wright. Generally, these types of programs are facilitated by an on-camera instructor or unseen narrator and use television as the delivery vehicle. Instruction is the context for the shows. While Ken Burns’ films provide significant production value, I would argue that classroom lectures or museum exhibits could deliver experiences similar to this genre’s programs, albeit with lower production values. As opposed to direct instruction or following a historical path, E-E teaches using the language of the medium most
commonly expressed through the fictional narratives of dramas or soap operas. Said another way, it is entertainment that educates (Singhal & Brown, 1995; Singhal, Cody, et al., 2004a; Singhal & Obregon, 1999; Singhal & Rogers, 1989) because instruction is embedded in a situation. For example, in a radio soap opera broadcast in South Africa, *Soul City* follows the lives of characters as they deal “with a range of health and development issues with the aim to empower audiences to make healthy choices” (The Communication Initiative, 2001). This is accomplished, for example, through the narrative of the protagonist learning what behaviors put him at risk of HIV infection and how to protect himself. Through the implementation of E-E interventions around the world, social problems such as HIV prevention and women’s reproductive health have been positively impacted. However, what has not been evaluated to date is the delivery of academic concepts found in the classroom instead of behavioral/health messages.

Therefore, considering the success of E-E to positively impact social behaviors, my research goal for this dissertation is to expand the behaviorally-based outcome focus of E-E methodology (i.e. changing attitudes, beliefs, or behaviors) into the realm of academic learning, specifically geographic education. This dissertation seeks to address the following overarching questions:

1. If dramas can be used to induce behavioral changes in viewers, could they also be used to induce academic learning as well?

2. If so, how could an E-E strategy be developed to teach geography or other academic subjects?
Problem Statement

If the Vice President for Education at National Geographic Society is correct when he states “it's no secret that Americans know next to nothing about geography” (Edelson, 2009), then the problem of geographic illiteracy in the United States is at a crisis point. One approach to mediating this problem may reside in the adaption of the Entertainment-Education (E-E) methodology, which has been used successfully around the world to impact a variety of social problems and detrimental behaviors (Singhal, Cody, et al., 2004a). However, current learning theories have not addressed learning via fictional narratives in terms of how academic concepts can or should be woven into the fabric of fictional narratives in order to drive the story. Therefore the problem of understanding how academic concepts interact with the narrative structure of fictional narratives is vital to developing what I am calling Academically-Based Entertainment-Education (ABEE). ABEE becomes the basis for developing E-E interventions that promote positive academic outcomes in its consumers, with an emphasis on learning geography.

Purpose of This Study

The overarching purpose of this multiple-article dissertation is to develop a model for academically-based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) interventions for use in traditional and new media targeting geography education. The main research question guiding this dissertation is the following: How might ABEE interventions based on fictional narratives be developed to teach academic concepts in geography? This
question can be broken down into three elemental questions, which become the central questions addressed in the articles of this dissertation:

1. How might Entertainment-Education be used to teach academic subjects?

2. How have scientific academic concepts been used to drive fictional narratives made for television?

3. How can the academically-based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) model be used in the non-linear environment found in new media?

**Form and content of the dissertation**

This dissertation reports on the development of an E-E strategy for teaching geography. First, I present an index of literature from the field of E-E as well as a catalog of E-E intervention titles cross-referenced to their target country audience. Although historically E-E has focused on health education, due to the interdisciplinary nature of the E-E field there is not a single disciplinary home in which it resides. In addition, there is not currently a way to locate E-E interventions by name or by country. I present these works to not only establish the historical context for E-E research but to also satisfy a critical need of providing a cross-referenced record of interventions from around the world. Second, I present the results of a qualitative case study using grounded theory to develop an Academically-based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) model for teaching through the language of traditional media. This research creates the bridge over which E-E can be transitioned from behaviorally-based into academic learning. Third, I theorize how my ABEE model can be adapted and applied to the non-linear and visual environment of Google Earth, which on the surface might appear to be devoid of the
narrative mechanics found in traditional media. In so doing, I translate the narrative mechanism for use in a more visually-dependent environment as well as one that is more explicitly a geography education environment. Lastly, I will discuss implications of my research for not only geography education, but for the elevation of non-formal education as an important component in life-long learning for all citizens of the United States, young and old alike. To begin, we need to understand the nature of the crisis of geographic illiteracy in the United States.

**Cultural Acceptance of Geographic Illiteracy?**

In an unintentional way, a 2009 AT&T cell phone commercial ("ShareATT", 2009) uses geographic illiteracy as the context through which the brand features the strength of its services. Extolling the convenience and assistance of simultaneously talking and surfing the web, spokesman Luke Wilson assists a friend who calls him as a “phone a friend” while a contestant on a game show. He needs to know the capital of Peru. When Wilson uses his phone to search the Internet for the answer, the commercial inadvertently provides two incidences of geographic illiteracy for the proverbial price of one. This, and the Kelly Ripa anecdotal evidence of geographic illiteracy in the United States, are quantitatively supported by a 2006 study commissioned by the National Geographic Society (NGS) (National Geographic-Roper Public Affairs, 2006; National Geographic Society, 2009a, 2009b). The NGS study, which utilized a representative sample of 510 young people aged 18-24 from the contiguous United States, reported that "the average respondent answered 54 percent of the questions correctly" (Roach, 2006). What makes these findings even more disconcerting is the fact that the survey did not
focus on obscure locations or *Jeopardy*-type questions requiring a high level of proficiency in the discipline of geography to answer. Instead, respondents were asked questions about places that were in the news on a regular basis, such as Iraq and Sudan rather than Paraguay or Madagascar. Even if a lack of world geography knowledge could be excused as unnecessary, consider that half of those surveyed were unsuccessful in finding New York state on a map, a third could not locate Louisiana and fewer than fifty percent could locate Mississippi on a map (and this after the one-two punch of Hurricanes Katrina and Rita). In light of these results, the inability of 18 year-old Miss Teen USA beauty pageant contestant Caitlin Upton ("IRamzyl", 2007) to explain her thoughts when asked why she thought a recent poll had found a fifth of all Americans could not find the U.S. on a world map seems predictable.

These scenarios suggest two possible points: (1) U.S. students are not being taught geography (or they are not being taught geography in an effective way), and (2) students are not connecting concepts from the classroom (formal education) with the world around them. To the first point, “geo-literacy is not a priority in today's schools, leaving teachers and schools without the resources to teach important content like cultural, political, and economic geography, earth science, environmental science, ecology, and geographic information systems (GIS)” (National Geographic Education Foundation, 2009). In a national survey (National Geographic-Roper Public Affairs, 2006), 49% of participants (age 18-24 years) reported having never taken a course devoted to geography during grades six to twelve of formal schooling (p. 17). Consider for example Texas elementary and middle school students experience geography only as
a subset of Social Studies (Texas Education Agency, 2010). In high school, course offerings may not exceed one semester of either World Geography or Advanced Placement (AP) World Geography and the optional AP Human Geography (Texas Education Agency, 2010).

The national survey may also suggest evidence that students are not being taught geography in an effective way. While 34% of those having taken a geography course felt they were “more likely to say they know ‘more’ about geography than the average person” (National Geographic-Roper Public Affairs, 2006, p. 17), the report concluded that taking a geography class had only a marginal impact on geographic knowledge since “overall they perform the same on this survey as those who did not have a specific geography course” (p. 17).

Offering only one semester of geography (two for highly motivated students wanting to test out of a college course, for example in Texas) for high school students and even less exposure to geography in the lower grades, provides little time to explore the full spectrum of the discipline rooted in the relationships not only between humans and the environment but the relationships between patterns and processes (e.g. Geography Education Standards Project, 1994; Gersmehl, 2008). Without these connections, I believe students are left with an impression of geography as nothing more than disconnected facts about where “things” are located.

Why does this matter? Geography as a discipline equips citizens with the cognitive tools needed to make decisions in this new era of globalization and global crises where what happens here affects “over there” and vice versa (e.g. Associated
Press, 2006; R. S. Bednarz & Bednarz, 2008; S. W. Bednarz & Bednarz, 1998; Fien, Cox, & Fossey, 1989; Gersmehl, 2008). The geographic illiteracy crisis revealed by the National Geographic survey might be addressed by the pending legislation *Teaching Geography Is Fundamental* (Cochran, Dodd, Van Hollen, & Wicker, 2007) currently in Congress (S.1376 and H.R.1240). However, even if geography enters the curriculum of formal educational in the United States, school geography may not be sufficient for developing a geographically literate society. As Coffield (2000) states,

> If all learning were to be represented by an iceberg, then the section above the surface of the water would be sufficient to cover formal learning, but the submerged two thirds of the structure would be needed to convey the much greater importance of informal learning. (p. 1)

What resides below the water’s surface may indeed hold the key for promoting the development of a geographically literate society in the United States and speaks to the second point I made previously regarding the need for students to make connections between the classroom and the greater world. To facilitate this connectivity, educators must find opportunities suited for learning that take place outside of formal education (La Belle, 1982). It is within this context that I frame my dissertation through the exploration of opportunities facilitated by non-formal and informal education (Bandura, 1986; Scibner & Cole, 1973; M. Smith, 2005). As a site for non-formal education (i.e. structured learning experiences outside of the formal classroom setting), E-E offers an interesting environment that may be well-suited for geography education, particularly through the medium of television.
CHAPTER II
MANUSCRIPT #1:
LITERATURE INDEX

Overview

Embarking on an Entertainment-Education (E-E) literature review revealed the body of literature in this field to be (a) relatively small, and (b) difficult to find. Keyword searches in traditional scholarly publication databases returned relatively few citations compared to the newer resource of Google Scholar, which provided significantly more publication records. During this search, the lack of a catalog of E-E interventions by title, country, and type was also discovered. In a field focused on developing and implementing interventions, the lack of an inventory of entertainment products that have been produced and are available for analysis presents a significant gap in the body of literature. Therefore, it was determined that an index of E-E literature published to date may be of more value than synthesis of E-E literature similar to the literature reviews provided in the 45 dissertations found in scholarly database searches.

I present here a categorized index of E-E literature. In addition, during review of each publication, I extracted the names of each E-E intervention to create a catalog cross-referenced by target audience, country, and media type. Furthermore, I present a brief discussion on the negative space revealed by this index. With the dominant focus of E-E on behavioral changes, there is an absence in the E-E literature of interventions
seeking to teach academic concepts. Lastly, suggestions for measures needed to improve access to E-E literature are presented.

**Introduction**

Embarking on a literature review for research conducted in the relatively young field of Entertainment-Education (E-E) presented several challenges. This article seeks to elucidate those challenges and report how they were met to produce a new product, a literature index, which subsequently emerged as a significant need for the E-E field.

Several complicating factors impacting the production of a comprehensive E-E literature review were revealed during a preliminary search of literature-indexing databases. First, a keyword search using the field’s moniker “Entertainment-Education” or the unhyphenated “entertainment education” resulted in a significant number of citations dealing with either entertainment or education, but not relevant to the specific discipline of E-E. Second, despite E-E’s interdisciplinary nature, one has to have prior knowledge of E-E’s de facto home in the subfield of health education and health communication in order to locate the bulk of E-E literature. Such singularity of application runs counterintuitive to an interdisciplinary field. Third, even though E-E possesses the word “education” in its name and purpose, it is poorly represented in education journals. As a result, the traditional databases which index educational publications, such as ProQuest or EBSCO, provide relatively few relevant “hits” when searched using “Entertainment-Education” keyword. Furthermore, none of the literature found in these databases reported research connected to the shows fitting my
academically-based Entertainment-Education (ABEE), indicating a lack of cross-pollination between the disciplines.

Complicating matters further, there is not at the present an index of E-E interventions. One has to scour individual articles in order to glean the titles of media projects. Whereas Internet databases of almost every film or television series ever produced currently exist, such as The Internet Movie Database (IMDb.com, 2009) or The Paley Center for Media Collection database (2009), E-E film and television interventions are generally not included, at least not tagged as E-E products. A final complication involves the differences in the way E-E interventions are developed for audiences in the United States verses other audiences. Outside of the U.S., E-E interventions are predominately designed as independent television or radio series. However within the United States, E-E interventions are limited to single episodes in existing television series or short-run story arcs spanning several episodes. Again, there is not a catalog of these interventions currently available in publication or online.

Therefore, since these complicating factors could contribute to researchers missing significant literature in the field needed to inform future research, this article seeks to fill this need by using a systematic approach to assemble an index of research published to date in the field of E-E. With the assemblage of this body of work, it is then possible to also compose an index of E-E film and television interventions by reviewing the literature populating the index.
Methodology

In a preliminary search of databases, key word searches for “edutainment” and “infotainment” returned publications generally focused on instructional technology applications (such as the use of multimedia or computer-based educational games) as opposed to narrative-based entertainment designed to teach which is associated with the term “Entertainment-Education.” Therefore, I selected the keyword “Entertainment-Education” for this review. Using a systematic literature review approach (Evans & Benefield, 2001; Fink, 2010), I performed a keyword search of scholarly literature databases (Table 2-1). The search was conducted during a two week period beginning June 12, 2010. Each database was searched using the keyword “Entertainment-Education,” seeking to find discipline-specific literature as opposed to literature containing either the use of entertainment (in its broadest sense) in education or vice versa.

Table 2-1
Scholarly Databases Searched. Key word “Entertainment-Education” was used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date searched</th>
<th>Database name</th>
<th>Citations returned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6/12/2010</td>
<td>ProQuest</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/13/2010</td>
<td>Google Scholar</td>
<td>5856</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/21/2010</td>
<td>InformaWorld</td>
<td>1148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/22/2010</td>
<td>Scopus</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/23/2010</td>
<td>EBSCOhost</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/26/2010</td>
<td>ERIC (CSA)</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/26/2010</td>
<td>Global Health (Ovid)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/26/2010</td>
<td>EPSCO/Medline</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/26/2010</td>
<td>PsychInfo</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/27/2010</td>
<td>PubMed</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/27/2010</td>
<td>ProQuest Social Science Journals</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Based on the excessive amount of return “hits” on the keyword, two databases were further filtered to hone the search (see Table 2-2 for filtering parameters). While all of the databases returned citations that had “entertainment” or “education” in the title or abstract but were not applicable to the field of Entertainment-Education, Google Scholar (Google, 2010) produced the most citations for this investigation. In all of the database results, it was necessary to review each citation to determine applicability to the discipline of E-E (criteria discussed below). For example, Google Scholar returned 5590 “hits” on the keyword search, however the rate of finding a relevant or non-duplicated citation declined significantly the deeper into the first 1000 citations I went. From citation #878 to #1000, no relevant citations were found. Therefore, it is more likely that all relevant E-E citations were represented in the first approximate 900 returns in Google Scholar. Since the interface does not provide access beyond 1000 records, further verification was not possible.

To determine relevance of citations for this study, the following criteria was used: If the literature had an aspect of Entertainment-Education as its central focus (e.g. reporting and/or describing a narrative-based an E-E intervention; evolution of the E-E field; discussing theoretically bases of E-E, etc.) defined as an intentional educational message embedded in a narrative as opposed to teaching using television (such as distance education), it was downloaded to the bibliography management software EndNote (EndNote, 2010). Each piece of literature was reviewed and coded based on content, theme, and intervention targets (audience type, country, message, etc). Names of media interventions (film, radio, television, etc.) mentioned in each publication were
compiled into a separate catalogue (Table 2-4A) recording E-E message (e.g. HIV/AIDS education, domestic violence prevention, oral rehydration therapy promotion, etc.), media type (film, television, radio, etc.), and target country. The emergent categories thus produce key words used to develop the Index.

Table 2-2
*Filters Used for ProQuest and Google Scholar Databases.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ProQuest restricted to:</th>
<th>Google Scholar restricted to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arts &amp; Humanities Full Text (ID 26643)</td>
<td>English only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissertations &amp; Theses: Full Text (ID 15119)</td>
<td>Articles only (no patents)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education Periodicals (ID 2146)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nursing &amp; Allied Health Source (no ID)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProQuest Nursing &amp; Allied Health Source (ID 5441)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProQuest Central (ID 25443)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProQuest Education Journals (ID 7262)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProQuest Family Health (ID 18044)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProQuest Health and Medical Complete (ID 4795)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProQuest Health Management (ID 15439)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProQuest Medical Library (ID 2390)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProQuest Psychology Journals (ID 5440)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Results and Discussion

From a combined total of just over 1,000 citations returned from 11 databases, 291 citations were found to be directly related to the field of E-E. It appears the use of the hyphenated “Entertainment-Education” and its abbreviation “E-E” have become the standard within the field. It should be noted that literature using older terminology may have been missed in this review. Terms such as “enter-education,” “info-tainment,” and “edu-tainment” have been used in older literature as well as by literature from researches not directly involved in the field. However, the terms have also been used for to denote educational media not qualifying as narrative-based E-E. “Edu-tainment” appears to be used more consistently outside E-E in the field of educational technology pertaining to instructional use of computers and/or computer games and simulations, generally addressing non-narrative uses of entertainment and technology. This potential confusion of terminology is one issue that should be addressed within the E-E field.
The pertinent E-E publications were (1) primarily concentrated in health and psychology journals and poorly represented in educational databases or journals, and (2) reported interventions or the application of theories to behavior-based outcomes only, such as discouraging risky sexual behavior (e.g. Buenting, 2006; Delgado & Austin, 2007; Rogers, Vaughan, Swalehe, Rao, & et al., 1999) or encouraging adoption of oral rehydration therapy (e.g. R. Abdulla, 2004). No literature was found that focused on the use of E-E methodology to teach an academic subject like math or geography. In fact, none of the few articles published on the E-E interventions *Voyage of the Mimi* (Bank Street College of Education, 1984) or its sequel *Second Voyage of the Mimi* (Bank Street College of Education, 1988) appeared in an E-E keyword search, which may indicate (1) a publication bias against E-E literature in educational journals and/or databases, or (2) a previously unexplored area for E-E research. Therefore, in the absence of research using E-E for academic concepts, as opposed to behavioral changes, the process of constructing this literature index reveals a large gap in the E-E literature or a new direction in which the field may grow.

The body of scholarly publications found in this study are published predominately in scholarly journals (56%), followed by chapters in edited books (19%), then dissertation or thesis (14%). Other publications types (reports, unpublished works, etc.) combined with books and online journals compose the remaining 11% of the publications (Figure 2-1). The annual trend in publications remained low from the period of 1977-1998, publishing fewer than eight per year, From 1999 to 2003, the field begins to experience growth with annual publication ranging from nine to 17. An
artificial spike of 39 publications appears in the year 2004 due to the publication of an edited book (A. Singhal, M. J. Cody, E. M. Rogers, & M. Sabido, 2004b), however the chapters in this book have been cited at least 291 times (as of October 31, 2010) according to Google Scholar. This publication, therefore, represents an important work in this field as evidenced by the fact that the majority of E-E literature is cited by less than 10 publications (Figure 2-2). Publication growth appears to trend upward after 2004 (Figure 2-3) dominated by journals articles in addition to a small increase in dissertation and thesis publications (Figure 2-4).

The E-E literature found in this study was classified by tone, research approach, and intervention genre. Tone of the publication speaks to the following categories defined as:

1. **Applied** – publications describing E-E interventions and their effects (i.e. examples of what has been produced)
2. **Historical** – publications reporting on the evolution of the field of E-E
3. **Theoretical** – publications which explore, posit, or generate explanations for how E-E influences audiences (i.e. how it “works”)
4. **Visionary** – publications proposing new directions for E-E

Publication tone (Figure 2-5) was evenly divided between Applied (48%) and the Historical and Theoretical (combined 47%) categories. Literature discussing new approaches to E-E (i.e. Visionary), e.g. interventions using non-traditional media, make up only 5% of the literature.
Figure 2-1
Proportion of Literature by Publication Type.
Figure 2-2

Frequency of Citation of Entertainment-Education Publications.
Figure 2-3
*Frequency of Entertainment-Education Publications by Year.*
Figure 2-4

*Dissertation and Thesis Publication by Year.*
Figure 2-5
Proportion of Entertainment-Education Publications by Tone.
The second classification criteria, research approach, inventoried literature by whether the study used a quantitative, qualitative, mixed methods, or quasi-experimental research design or if only a description of the results was reported (Figure 2-6). Qualitative or quantitative research designs dominate the field (46% and 38% respectively) with a few mixed methods or quasi-experimental approaches reported (2% and 1% respectively). Literature only providing results, usually in a narrative form composed 13% of the literature.

Lastly, coding for intervention genre (Figure 2-7) reveals a strong reliance on television and radio media to deliver health messages. Sixty-two percent of E-E interventions are delivered in the form of radio or television series plus an addition 16% delivered through a short run storyline spanning a limited number of episodes (one to four) in an existing (non-E-E) television series. E-E messages are primarily rooted in health education (Figure 2-8), comprising 60% of the target messages discussed in this body of literature. It should be noted that interventions whose target messages were not described by the publication authors were not included in this statistic; therefore there is a possibility that the number of interventions targeting health education could be higher.
Figure 2-6
*Frequency of Publications by Research Approach.*
Figure 2-7
Proportion of Interventions by Genre.
Figure 2-8
Messages in Entertainment-Education and Short-Run Interventions.
Conclusions

As a result of this review, I offer the following suggestions to aid E-E researchers and the growth of the field:

1. *E-E researchers should use consistent terminology, specifically with the inclusion of the term “Entertainment-Education” and “E-E” as a key words when submitting articles for publication.* Since it appears that “Entertainment-Education” and “E-E” have displaced other terms (e.g. edu-tainment, enter-education) as the field’s identifying labels, researchers should included these terms in the keyword section of the publication as well. This will aid search engines in identifying E-E specific publications.

2. *Literature indexing database managers should update their index to utilize “Entertainment-Education” as a keyword associated with E-E literature.* Since databases in this study returned all publications containing either the word “entertainment” or “education” in response to the keyword search of “Entertainment-Education”, it would appear that the hyphenated term is not currently recognized as a keyword, but rather as a combination of words producing irrelevant search results.

3. *Information about film and television E-E interventions should be made available in a centralized Internet-based database.* The field is a dynamic one which continues to grow as new interventions are developed. It is therefore important for scholars to have access to, and be able to contribute to the upkeep of, a database cataloging the interventions in the field, such as the one I created
in this study. Existing resources such as the Internet Movie Database (IMDb) or Wikipedia could serve as the hosting venue. IMDb (IMDb.com, 2009) provides a searchable community-generated database of movies, television, and their cast and crew. Submission requests to have a title included in the database is free (free registration is required to access the submission form). I propose that E-E titles be tagged with “Entertainment-Education” keyword. In addition, episodes of television shows focusing on E-E storylines, e.g. healthy eating message “5 a Day” running across three episodes in season 10 of the U.S. medical drama ER (Episode 20: “Abby Normal”, Episode 21: “Midnight”, and Episode 22: “Drive”) should also be added, which is important for capturing E-E interventions targeting U.S. audiences. Alternatively, a Wikipedia (Wikipedia.com, 2010) page could be created specifically for E-E interventions, allowing for maintenance by the E-E scholarly community.

4. The large gap in the body of literature resulting from research dominance of E-E in health communication presents an opportunity for the E-E methodology to be applied to other genres of learning besides health messages and behavior outcomes. Teaching of academic subjects traditionally found in formal education (e.g. math, geography, science, etc.) represents fertile ground in which E-E can expand.

Index of Entertainment-Education Publications

The resulting index of publications from this study is presented below. The numbers listed in each keyword category correspond to the bibliographic reference
found in Table 2-3 following the index. The companion catalogues of E-E interventions can be found in Table 2-4A and Table 2-4B and are cross-referenced by target country and primary topic.

**Activism, Activist, Advocacy** 3, 69, 70, 83, 93, 106, 121, 135, 160, 212, 242, 271, 278, 279, 280

**Adult education** 139

**Advertising technique** 44, 69, 168

**Affect** 84, 116

**Assessment (of interventions)** 39, 47, 75, 105, 114, 122, 141, 210, 216, 237, 253

**Attitudes** 7, 10, 50, 51, 58, 79, 81, 91, 116, 117, 133, 143, 156, 187, 192, 208, 242, 262, 263

**Values and behavior** 208

**Audience**

**Behavior** 111, 205

**Identification** 223, 229, 262, 263

**Involvement** 84, 167, 248, 249, 250

**Research** 87, 153, 272

**Response** 203

**Survey**

**Nielsen ratings** 107

**Frank N. Magid** 87, 272
Television audience 272

Authenticity 81

Avatar (in educational video games) 125

see also Simulation or Virtual Agent

Behavior Change 5, 41, 67, 68, 73, 88, 94, 110, 135, 170, 171, 206, 231, 250, 253, 278, 284

Beliefs 262, 263

Bollywood 241, 255

Character education 262, 263

Child Brides 224

Children/Children’s

Beliefs 262, 263

Television 270

Cognition see Memory or Social cognition

Cognitive

Change 7, 25, 91

Image mapping 112

Therapy 104, 129

Collaboration (between media and health industries) 21, 23

Collective space 138

Communication

Activism 83
Interpersonal 70, 197, 248, 254
Risk communication 135
Science communication 157
Strategies 60, 219
Community
  -based 75, 247
  -level change 197
Listening 163, 237
Listening groups 253
Theater 86
Complex Systems 215
Composition see Rhetoric
Comprehension 82
  see also Cognition or Memory
Computerized
  Decision Support System (CDSS) 97
  Patient Decision Aid (CPtDA) 96
Consumer
  Behavior 69, 153
  Survey 153
Continuing Education 139
Country

*see also Region*

**Bangladesh** 35, 46, 54, 66, 89, 90, 211

**Beliz** 176

**Bolivia** 46

**Botswana** 73, 74, 109, 133, 156, 164, 199

**Brazil** 46, 118, 212, 213, 214

**Cambodia** 134

**Cameroon** 49

**Canada** 39, 61

**China** 11, 190, 282

**Colombia** 7, 46, 155

**Costa Rica** 228

**Cuba** 46

**Ecuador** 46

**Egypt** 1, 46, 211

**El Salvador** 46, 256

**England** 29

*see also Region – United Kingdom*

**Ethiopia** 13, 41, 45, 67, 73, 74, 123, 177, 192, 245, 246, 288

*see also Rural – Ethiopia*

**Finland** 186
Gambia 280
Ghana 73, 74, 159
Guatemala 46, 220
Guyana 37
Haiti 139
Honduras 46

see also Rural – India

Indonesia 29, 46, 206, 211, 228, 258, 259
Israel 81, 130, 211
Jamaica 29, 37, 211, 228, 229, 235
Japan 29, 205, 238, 239, 265
Kenya 4, 29, 33, 46, 114, 126, 211, 228, 229, 235, 236
Kiribati, Republic of 46
Korea 8, 9, 10, 46, 124
Madagascar 46
Mali 46
Mexico 11, 32, 33, 46, 169, 175, 182, 211, 214, 229, 236, 238, 242, 244

Ciudad Juarez (City of Juarez) 169
Nepal 46, 58, 89, 128, 150, 253, 260, 261, 262, 263
Nicaragua 44, 119
Nigeria 5, 33, 36, 46, 120, 178, 211
Pakistan 89, 258, 259
Peru 46, 190, 205, 211, 214, 218, 223, 229, 232, 235, 238, 242, 256, 280, 287
Philippines, The 44, 46, 209, 280
Russia 92
Rwanda 61, 158
Senegal 46
Solomon Islands 46
South Africa 46, 47, 68, 82, 162, 212, 213, 214, 225, 229, 231, 240, 268, 269, 271
South Korea 98
Spain 91
Sri Lanka 46, 253
St. Lucia 231, 276
Sudan 80
Tanzania 40, 46, 74, 82, 106, 142, 151, 187, 191, 229, 235, 242, 244, 253, 264, 266, 267, 273, 274, 275, 277, 280, 287
Thailand 84, 132, 195, 196, 239
The Netherlands 19, 20, 21, 22
Turkey 189, 211, 291

California 186

Hawaii 141

Ohio 290

Pennsylvania

Philadelphia 241

Vietnam 64, 85

see also Rural – Vietnam

Zambia 74

Zimbabwe 29, 37, 72, 73, 74, 110, 211, 253, 280

Cross Cultural 116, 196

Crowd 158

Cultural

Change 269

Context 72, 290

Proximity 238

Shareability 195, 196, 238, 239

Studies 116, 198
Culture 58, 63, 64, 70, 72, 75, 85, 89, 112, 137, 178, 196, 235, 238, 258, 265

Curriculum 33, 68, 139

Decision aids 95, 96, 279

Developing countries 15, 26, 32, 126, 128, 140, 202, 211, 232, 236, 258

Development Communication 3, 89, 126, 140, 201, 258, 280

Disabilities/Disabled 262, 263

Disease

Control 75, 177, 284

Prevention 114, 123, 133, 186

Dissent 158


see also Thesis

Distance education 181

Divorce 8

Educational

Psychology 125

Technology 68, 125

Edutainment 39, 95, 97, 151, 172, 268, 279

Electronic bulletin board messages 8

Embedded messages 76

Emotion 9, 41, 112, 157, 174

Empathy 9

Empowerment 160, 212, 213, 289

Enjoyment 79, 100

Enter-educate 5, 172

Entertainment-Education

  History of 2, 193, 218

  Supplementary 274

Epilogue (announcement at end of an E-E show) 243

Ethical dilemma (of Entertainment-Education) 34

Exposure 26, 67

Fear 41, 98, 288

Feminism 119, 138, 200, 201

  Theory see Theories and Models

Field experiment 120

  see also Research Approach

Folk 29, 37, 49, 90, 159

  -tale 255

  Media 89

  Performance 83
Theater 75

Forum theater 212, 213

Freirean pedagogy 212

Games

Board 113

Digital 281

Serious 99, 281

Video 125, 180

Gender 116, 160

and Development (GAD) 200, 201

Equality 137, 188, 216, 230

Genocide 158

Giroux 198

Globalization 12, 59

Health

Behavior 60, 65, 66, 69, 120, 133, 150, 278

Beliefs 47, 68, 98, 99, 108, 114, 123, 250, 278, 286


Disparities 70

see also Health Related Messages

Information 87, 151

Literacy 95, 135, 279

Workers 260

HealthStyles database 60

Hegemony 57, 59

Hollywood 14, 76, 109, 136, 143, 144, 241, 285, 286

Hotline 108

Image Theater 212, 213

Identification 50, 79, 145, 223, 229, 245, 262, 263

Indigenous knowledge 89

Intervention

Genre

Applied theatre 47

Alternative media 89

see also Folk

Animation 63, 137, 181, 195, 231, 281

Cartoons see Animation
Cell phone 61, 101

Comic Book 79, 137, 169, 184, 192

*El Asesino Invisible* 169

Cinema (feature, short)

*Amra Dujon* 211

*Angel Baby* 179

*At Dance* 91

*Bor Holo, Dor Kholo* 35, 211

*Earlier Yet Later* 91

*Heartlines* 68

*Iron Film* 289

*Karate Kids* 195, 196, 231

*Meena* 137, 231

*Moolaade* 80

*Passion of the Christ, The* 28

*Phir Milenge* 241, 255

*Red Card: Sammy's Final Match* 114

*Shared Hope* 289

*Shop, The* 289

*Sonamoni* 211

*Starting Over* 120

*Warrior Marks* 80
Yellow Card 23, 36
Fotonovela 184, 242
Meet the Montoyas 184

Folk (dance, performance, song, storytelling, theater, etc.) 29, 37, 49, 75, 83, 89, 90, 159, 255

Game

I Can End Deportation 281
Life Challenge 6
True Friends 113

see also Avatar, Serious Game, Simulation, or Video games

Graphic Novel 184

Mobile delivery (mobisodes) 61

Multimedia 119

Music 5, 29, 63, 209, 211, 229

Music videos 189, 209

Photography 80, 201, 216, 219, 220, 226, 237

Podcast 61

Puppetry 65, 89

McSpoons Family, The 65

Radio

A Message to the Conscience 256

Apwe Plezi 231, 276
Archers, The 29, 37, 211, 229, 231
Ashreat Al Amal 80
Bienvenida Salud! 6, 48, 56, 138, 162, 200, 226, 235
Bodylove 104, 105
Butir Butir Pasir Di Laut 29, 211, 227
Chuyen Que Minh 64, 85
Cut Your Coat According to Your Cloth 6, 58, 253, 260, 261
Dehleez 161, 190
Dulcimina 29, 211
El Regalo de Salud 168
Enfrentate 109
Fakube Jarra 6
Ghaanti Heri Haad Nilaun 58
Heartlines 68
Hillcrest 247
Hopeful Village 29
In a Lighter Mood 6, 33, 211
Jeevan Saurabh 16, 190
Journey of Life 6, 41, 67, 123, 177, 245, 288
Life at the Mimosa Hotel 29
Lilin-Lilin di Depan 6
Makgabaneng 74, 133, 156, 164, 171, 199
Mopani Junction 72, 74, 171

Nalamdana 6, 46

Naseberry Street 29, 211, 227, 229, 235

Never Too Late 84

Nshilakamona 6

Que Mihn Xanh Mai 64

Raymond, the Sprayman 29, 211, 229

Service Brings Reward 6, 260, 261

Stella 29, 211


Tinka Tinka Sukh 122, 160, 162, 163, 190, 214, 224, 229, 235, 237, 244, 248, 249, 250, 287

Tres Hambres Sin Fronteras 29, 211

Twende na Wakati 40, 74, 82, 106, 162, 187, 191, 202, 229, 235, 242, 244, 250, 251, 264, 266, 267, 273, 275, 277, 287

Un Mensaje a la Conciencia 256

Urunana 61, 158

Ushikwapo Shikamana 29, 126, 211, 227, 229, 235, 236

Yeken Kignit 13

Zinduka! 6

Serious game 99, 281
Talk show 121, 198

Television

Reality TV 9, 98

Series by name (made-for-television film, reality, special, or telenovela)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Series</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aahat</td>
<td>258, 259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accompaname</td>
<td>11, 33, 211, 232, 236, 238, 242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aik Hi Rastha</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akarumwaa Nechekuchera</td>
<td>6, 29, 37, 211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alang Alang</td>
<td>258, 259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Child Is Crying There</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ana Zananna</td>
<td>1, 211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrea: Time for Love</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baixing</td>
<td>11, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But Mother...</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caminemos</td>
<td>211, 232, 238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cock Crow at Dawn</td>
<td>33, 211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costa!</td>
<td>20, 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crossroads</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damakegne ou la Juste Mesure</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Enders</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Carruaje</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
El Combate 232, 238

Face to Face 4

Family House, The 1

Haath Se Haath Milaa 235, 251, 254

Handle with Care? 39

Hope Was Always There 291

Hum Log 11, 25, 29, 32, 33, 57, 59 82, 175, 190, 210, 211, 228, 229, 231, 232, 235, 236, 242, 244, 252

Hum Raahi 188, 232, 236

Jasoos Vijay 235, 251, 254

Ke Wang 282

Kembang untuk Nur 6, 206

Khushi Ko Sansar 262, 263

Koko Close 6

La antorcha encendida 182

La Tormenta 222, 232

Lacos de Familia 118

Ladrón de Corazones 285

Lazos de Sangre 214

Los Caudillos 232

Los Hijos de Nadie 222

Malhacao 118
Mama Olu 6

Medisch Centrum West 6, 21, 22

Neighbors 211

Nggimpyo! 10

Nijaaat 258, 259

Nosotras las Mujeres 232, 238

Nunl Dduhyo! 9, 124

Open Your Eyes! see Nunl Dduhyo!

Oshin 29, 205, 236, 238, 239, 265

Perro Amor 155

Por Amor 232, 238

Que Pasa, U.S.A? 229

Radionovela da Camisinha 213

Secret of Production, The 1

Secret of the Land 1

Senda de Gloria 182

Se sexto Sentido 119

Shabuj Chaya 6, 54

Shin Dong-Yub & Nam Hee-Suk’s Man II Man 98

Simplemente Maria 190, 205, 211, 214, 218, 223, 229, 232, 235, 236, 238, 242, 250, 256, 280, 287
Soul City 46, 68, 82, 214, 225, 229, 231, 235, 240, 250, 268, 269

Soul City 4 6, 162, 268, 271

Sparrows Don't Migrate 189, 211, 227, 291

Sterling Towers 167

Super Book 92

Tushauriane 29, 33, 211, 236

Uga Uga 118

Vamos Juntos 232, 238

Veggie Tales 55

Ven Conmigo 11, 33, 211, 222, 229, 232, 236, 238, 242, 244

Villa Borghese 20

Villa Madalena 118

Yo Amo a Paquita Gallego 155

Zeg eens A 19

Individual episode or short run storyline

7th Heaven 6, 76

All in the Family 76, 242

All My Children (U.S. soap opera) 6

As the World Turns (U.S. soap opera) 286

Beverly Hills 90210 82
**Bold & the Beautiful, The** 14, 108, 109, 145, 156, 235

*Chicago Hope* 6, 76

*Coach* 76

*CSI* 144

*CSI: New York* 143

*Dallas* 249

*Dave’s World* 76

*Dawson’s Creek* 82

*Days of Our Lives (U.S. soap opera)* 6, 76

*Ellen* 76

*ER* 2, 6, 14, 46, 76, 82, 87, 103, 136, 272, 284, 286

*Felicity* 82

*Friends* 43, 82, 103, 109, 113, 196, 289

*Frasier* 76

*Friday Night Lights* 53

*General Hospital (U.S. soap opera)* 39, 76

*Girlfriends* 109

*Goode Behavior* 6, 76

*Gossip Girl* 53

*Grey’s Anatomy* 87, 143, 144, 286

*Guiding Light (U.S. soap opera)* 6, 76

*Happy Days* 103
High Incident 6, 76

Home Improvement 76

House 1, 143, 144

John Laroquette Show, The 6, 76

Maude 76, 229

Mr. Rogers' Neighborhood 6, 76

Nick Freno 6, 76

NYPD Blue 166

O.C, The 53, 146, 149

One Tree Hill 53

Party of Five 76

Rosie O'Donnell Show 121

Sabrina, The Teenage Witch 6, 76

Savannah 6, 76

Sesame Street 52, 107, 211, 229

Step by Step 6, 76

Thirtysomething 14, 76, 203, 286

Young and the Restless, The 14

Telenovela (as a genre) 7, 33, 35, 109, 118, 130, 155, 205, 218, 222, 223, 229, 232, 236, 256, 269, 285, 287

Theater/Performance
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Family Affair: The Trilogy about Alzheimer's Disease</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Family History</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Woman in Transition</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DramAide</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aurat</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhoma</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eighth Day of the Week</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equatorial Trilogy, The</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For Pete’s Sake</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaon Se Shahar Tak</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hatyaare</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalajatha</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucille</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ms. Rumors</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sauvons des Vies</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shibobo</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugar Bear</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vagina Monologues, The</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth for Real</td>
<td>6, 110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Uncategorized/Other
Action Health 46

Amakhosi 6

Cancion de la Raza 229

Mulero 6

Koteba 211

The Suami Siaga 6, 206

Video

A Story about Toni, Mike, and Valerie 101

Video games 125, 180

Message content area

Agriculture 64, 85, 178

Adaptive management 94

Integrated pest management 64, 85

Biodiversity 89, 94

Biotechnology 157

Body image 208

Carbon Monoxide 169

Cardiovascular Disease 104

Citizenship 52

Conservation 49, 89, 94

Designated driver 103

see also Drunk driving
Drunk driving 2

Domestic Violence 62, 162, 271

Environmental education 64, 75, 89, 94

Gang Prevention 113

Health related messages

5 Fruits A Day 272

Acquired Immune Deficiency (AIDS) see HIV/Aids

Addiction 183

Alzheimer Disease 71

Anti-drug 81

Cancer (disease, screening) 14, 17, 87, 95, 96, 97, 115, 132, 134, 135, 136, 166, 184, 203, 279, 285, 286

see also Early detection

Breast (health, cancer, screening) 14, 17, 87, 95, 96, 97, 184, 203, 285, 286

Cervical 14, 132, 134

see also Human papillomavirus (HPV)

Prostate (cancer, cancer screening) 135, 166, 279

Child Birth see Maternal Health

Children with Disabilities 262, 263

Condom use 43

Contraception 110
Diabetes 104, 184
Type 2 diabetes 290
Drug Abuse 81
Early detection 39
Eating Disorders 53, 208
Eating Habits 53
Female Genital Cutting 80
Human papillomavirus (HPV) 14
Immunization 76
Malaria 75
Mammogram 39, 131, 285
Maternal
   Health 206
   Mortality prevention 206
Mental (health, illness) 179

Moral education 55

Nutrition/Nutrition education 44, 53, 90, 272

Oral Rehydration Therapy 1

Organ donation (blood, bone marrow, cornea) 9, 10, 124, 143, 144, 145

Physical activity 105

Reproductive health 48, 80, 138, 260, 278

Schizophrenia 179

Sex

   Education 13, 43, 101, 106, 146, 191, 209, 283

   “Safe sex” 123, 146, 149

Sexual

   Behavior 36, 51, 191, 209

   Responsibility 116

Sexuality 24

Sexually transmitted diseases (STD) 77, 109, 110, 148, 159, 287

Smoking/smokers 153

   Cessation 141, 153, 186

Stress management 99, 100

Syphilis 109, 284

Type 2 Diabetes 290
Vitamin A 90

Natural Resource Management 89

Pest Management 64, 85

Religious

Christianity 28, 55, 84, 92, 139, 208

Invisible Theater 212, 213

Issue involvement 9, 10

Knowledge, attitude and practice (KAP) 47, 122, 187, 197, 225, 229, 273, 281

Language arts 38

Legislative Theater 212, 213

Letter

Fan letters see Research Approaches – Fan Letters

Letter writing 84, 122, 161, 229, 252

Literature

Latin American 182

Manipulation 158

Mass media 6, 7, 15, 24, 31, 36, 40, 51, 55, 66, 72, 84, 92, 104, 106, 107, 109, 114, 117, 123, 128, 131, 146, 153, 154, 155, 160, 162, 166, 167, 173, 176, 197, 200, 208, 211, 236, 248, 251, 253, 256, 257, 262, 263, 264, 266, 272, 283, 284

Media

Advocacy 69, 70, 93, 106, 135, 242, 280

Literacy 106
MediaSharp 165
Practitioners or professions 23, 178
Recall 176
Saturation 87, 121, 207

Mediated reality 107
Mediating role of enjoyment 100
Memory 82, 197

see also Cognition or Comprehension

Metaphor 170
Morals 62

Education 55
Motivation 144, 145, 148
Myth 33

Narrative

see also Narratives or Stories

Analysis see Research Approach – Analysis

Communication 115
Impact 65, 170
Interventions 170
Processing 149
Reality 290
Role in constructing reality 290
Simulations 242

Transportation 50 145

Visual 219

Narratives 79, 109, 143

Narratization 83

New Media 8

Newsletter 110

Observational learning 210, 229

Oppressed see People Group – Oppressed

Optimistic bias

Organization/Project

Act Alive project 47

Center for the Theater of the Oppressed 212

see also Theatre of the Oppressed

Centers for Disease Control (CDC) (United States) 72, 74, 108, 165, 171, 272

Drama for AIDS Education (DramAidE) 47, 208, 212, 213

Femina-Health Information Project 151

Harvard Alcohol Project 103, 107, 229, 242

Hollywood, Health & Society (HH&S) 136, 144, 285

Johns Hopkins 174, 242, 261

Listen to Your Heart project 247

Mothers Against Drunk Driving (MADD) 229
Minga Peru 56, 200, 226
North Karelia Project 186
Population Communication International (PCI) 242, 244
Population Communication Services (PCS), Johns Hopkins University 242, 261
Pune Project 224
Puntos de Encuentro 119
Radio Communication Project 58, 128, 253, 260
Rare 94
Scenarios from the Sahel Competition 289
Stanford Heart Disease Prevention Program 186
Suami Siaga Campaign 206
U.S. Novela Health Education (University of Washington) 242

Paradoxical communication 163
Parasocial 8, 36, 84, 86, 104, 105, 117, 123, 124, 132, 147, 155, 162, 163, 188, 196, 205, 210, 211, 216, 223, 228, 229, 237, 248, 249, 252, 263, 282, 286

Participatory

Communication 46, 56, 57, 93, 140, 200, 212, 213, 219, 220, 261, 268
Photography 80, 201, 216, 219, 220, 226, 237
Sketching 80, 226, 290
Theater 83, 160, 201, 212, 213, 216
Theory see Theories and Models – Theory
Pathways to Change tools 72, 74, 171

People Group

Adolescents 16, 24, 43, 51, 53, 81, 116, 141, 283

African-Americans 71, 101, 104, 108

Children 6, 52, 55, 63, 65, 168, 181, 195, 196, 226, 262, 263, 270

Children and youth 63

College students 99, 100

see also Undergraduate students

Dutch 20

Female 80, 201, 289

Girls 137

High school students 68

Hispanic 131, 168, 184

Homosexual 284

Latina 17, 131

Latino 285

Low-literate 95, 97, 279

Male 46, 80, 201, 279, 289

Mexican-American 168

Middle class (India) 167

Oppressed 83, 160, 198, 212, 213, 235

Military (Kenya) 114
Scientists 157

Spanish
- -language 285
- -learning 38
- -speaking viewers 131, 285

Street children 195, 196

Teenagers 53, 116, 117, 141, 176

Twa people 158

Undergraduate students 50

Viewers 98, 116, 143, 145, 285

Women 25, 45, 66, 80, 86, 97, 101, 132, 138, 160, 200, 226, 287

Young adults 7, 51

Youth 41, 77

Perceptions 178

Personal communication networks 142

Policy

Decisions 136

Implications 3

Popular

Culture 89, 258

Media 30, 214, 283

Population program 261
Postcolonial 200

Ethnography 160

Feminism 201

Postmodern 198

Pot-banging 214, 271

Praxis 219, 226

Pro-development 4, 32, 135, 210, 218, 228

Pro-social 25, 26, 29, 30, 33, 34, 37, 50, 79, 106, 118, 167, 188, 209, 211, 218, 222, 228, 229, 238, 239, 262, 263, 265, 269, 282, 288

Behavior 210

Change 93, 162

Development 139

Public

Communication 157, 241

Health 36, 66, 68, 98, 104, 114, 123, 131, 151, 155, 167, 170, 174, 287

Public Service Announcement (PSA) 243

Sphere 138, 160, 261

Quasi-friendship 196

see also Parasocial

Radio Listening Groups 253

Realism 81, 126

Reflective Practice/Reflexivity 160, 201
Region

*see also* Country

**Africa**

Sahel region 289

Sub-Sahara 74

**Amazon**

Peruvian Amazon 48, 56, 138, 162, 200, 226

Asia 85, 132, 190

South Asia 137, 231

**European Community (EC)** 157

Himalaya 89

Hindu Kush 89

**Latin America** 46, 182, 189, 205, 223, 269

Middle East 3

Peruvian Amazon *see* Amazon

**Rural**

Ethiopia 45

India 75

Vietnam 64

Sahel region *see* Africa

**Third World** 26, 29, 32, 57, 59, 189, 202, 227, 238

**United Kingdom** 37, 42, 211, 218, 229, 231
West Midlands 247

United States of America

Appalachia 290

Reinforcement 73, 133

Research approach

2x2 between-subjects experiment 148
2x2 factorial 91

see also Factor Analysis

2x3 design 179

2x3 (Advocate's perspective X message style) between-subjects factorial design 179

Action Research 157

Participatory Action Research (PAR) 114

Audio computer assisted self-interview (ACASI) 101

Auto-correlation model 40

ANOVA 22, 84, 99, 107, 148, 166, 196

Case study 58, 75, 89, 92, 151, 163, 169, 198, 218, 237, 256, 288

Coding 56, 107

Content analysis 4, 8 53, 76, 84, 149, 155, 158, 191, 198, 203, 210, 211, 229, 252, 267, 289

Convenience survey 136

Correlation analysis 123, 177
Cross-case analysis 198

Diary 61

Digitally Integrated Videographic Analysis (DIVA) Process 129

Embedded Analysis 256

Ethnography 48, 151, 200, 201

Performance Ethnography 62

Postcolonial ethnography 160

Factor analysis 262, 263, 272

Fan Letters (as research data) 252

Focus group 48, 56, 68, 195, 201, 285, 290

Formative Research 60, 137, 139, 168, 198, 229, 244, 250, 268, 271, 288, 291

Jewelry box 96

Interview 21, 36, 48, 56, 101, 105, 169, 201, 224, 277

Listeners as Producers 56

Longitudinal 43, 141, 216, 254

Macro-analysis 6

MANOVA 196

Market research 272

Meta-analysis 15

Mixed methods 68, 81, 104, 105

Multiple regression analysis 98

Multivariate analysis 276
Multivariate logistic regression 253
Narrative Analysis 255
Network Modeling Approach 40
Participatory approach 167
Performance Ethnography 62
Postcolonial ethnography 160
Posttest only 166
Questionnaire 36, 81, 91, 116, 120, 132, 149, 158, 208, 284
Random sample 90
Randomized trial 135, 150
Regression analysis 25, 98
Repeated measures 68
Semi-structured interview 169
Semiotic analysis 229
Survey 9, 10, 22, 28, 41, 43, 48, 64, 77, 84, 85, 86, 87, 90, 98, 108, 110, 114, 122, 123, 124, 136, 141, 145, 153, 163, 164, 181, 199, 209, 216, 253, 260, 272, 276, 284
Systematic review 15
T-test 99, 107, 114
Telephone survey 43, 108
Textual analysis 289

Triangulation 81, 104, 105, 229

Trigger format 131

Resistance

Leading to social change 160

Overcoming resistance 146, 149

Rhetoric 62, 92

Risk

Avoidance 170

Communication see Communication

Role

Role models 58, 72, 98, 133, 134, 164, 196, 199, 273, 277

Role playing 158

Science 52, 64, 75, 94, 119, 129, 157, 164, 178, 181, 215, 250, 256

Self 53, 101

Advocacy 279


Image 53

Service delivery 237

Sex media 24

Shareability see Cultural shareability
Show development 23, 288

Simulation 125, 242

Social

Capital 224

Change 11, 13, 29, 31, 35, 40, 46, 47, 60, 89, 93, 119, 137, 152, 160, 162, 163, 192, 197, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 224, 225, 248, 261, 264, 266, 268, 269

Cognition 272

Cognitive skills 113

Cognitive theory (SCT) see Theories and Models – Social Cognitive Theory

Construction of technology 250

Issue messages (SIM) 107

Issues 86, 107, 137, 277

Justice 83, 212, 226, 281

Marketing 1, 3, 7, 93, 94, 135, 140, 165, 186, 268, 269, 278, 280, 291

Merchandising 118, 130, 214, 269

Messages 209

Mobilization 3, 137, 271, 280

Networks 64

Norms 137

Problems see Social Issues

Psychology 104, 140, 157, 286

Reform 83
Research 149, 191
Structure 139
Systems 40
Work 86
Society 188, 222, 271
Sociology 107
Spectacle 198
Spect-actor (spectator as actor) 213
Status 25
Stigma 109, 120, 156, 179
Stories 49, 91, 171, 272
Storytelling 49, 52, 89
Traditional 49
Strategic communication 264
Subaltern 57, 138
Summative evaluation 229
Summative research 168
Taboo 8, 80, 162, 271
Talk show see Genre – Talk Show
Television directors and producers 164
Text messages 84
Textocentrism 226
Theater for Change 160

Theater

*see also* Intervention genre – Theater/Performance

Interactive 181

Prison 212, 213

Theatre of the Oppressed 83, 160, 212, 213, 235

Theories and Models

3E Model 157

7 Ps of EE 172, 195

9 Ps of E-E 66

Affective Parasocial Interaction 84

Agenda Setting 207, 250

Apprenticeship in Learning 181

Archetypes and stereotypes 13

Archetypes of the Collective Unconscious 250

Archie Bunker Effect 229, 235

Attitude Accessibility Theory 242

Audience-Centered Model 243

Audience Involvement Model 248

Banking Theory of Learning (Freire) 3

Behavior Change Communication (BCC) 171, 278

Behavior Development and Social Change Model 137
Behavioral Decision Theory 135, 177
Belief System Theory 208, 250
Boredom Theory 166, 218
Boundary spanning 92
Bourdieu’s General Theory of Practice 21
Campaign Theory 258
Cancer Control Continuum Framework 115
Capacity Model of Transfer of Learning 52
Celebrity Identification 27, 241, 263
Change Theory 94
Circular Communication Model 36, 211, 229
Cognitive Theory 112
Cognitive Load Theory 166
Collective Efficacy 122, 132, 163, 229, 231, 235, 237, 248, 249, 250
Communication Model 13, 36, 211, 229
Complex Adaptive Systems 119
Complexity Science 119, 215
Concept of the Triune Brain 13, 36, 211, 222, 229
Consistency Theory 157
Contrast Modeling 164
Convergence Theory of Communication 112
Counterarguing 242, 243
Critical Pedagogy 198
Critical subjectivity 198
Cultivation (analysis, theory) 82, 87, 107, 155, 207, 243
Cultural Theory 198
Cyclical Communication Strategy 269
Development Theories (as a category) 280
Dialogic Pedagogy 213, 219, 220, 280
Diffusion of Innovation 1, 3, 40, 59, 84, 92, 107, 128, 140, 183, 186, 197, 207, 250, 273, 280
Diffusion (model or theory) 11, 12, 187
Drama Theory 13, 33, 36, 53, 107, 112, 123, 177, 208, 211, 222, 229, 245, 250, 290
Dual-Processing Models of Persuasion 88
Educational Theory 177
Edutainment Decision Aid Model 95, 279
Elaboration Likelihood Model (ELM) 9, 79, 88, 91, 113, 123, 146, 147, 149, 243, 250
Entertainment Education Paradigm 181
Entertainment Overcoming Resistance Model 149
Entertainment Theory 40, 179
Entertainment-Education Communication Strategy 211
Entertainment Education Paradigm 181
Entertainment-Education Strategy 229, 236, 254, 255

Extended Parallel Process Model (EPPM) 41, 114, 246, 288

Fear Appeal Theory 288

Feminist Communication Theory 200

Feminist Theory 86, 160

Fisher's Narrative Paradigm 62, 256

Forced Effort Theory of Boredom 166

Gray Matrix 84

Grounded Theory 21

Group Dynamics Theory 131

Guided Communication Strategies 60

Habermas, Jürgen see Theory of Communicative Action or Theory of the Public Sphere

Halo Effect 208

Health Belief Model (HBM) 47, 68, 98, 99, 108, 114, 123, 250, 278, 286

Hierarchy of Effects Model (HOE) 208, 250, 263, 273

Hyperdermic Needle Model of Communication 253

Ideation (model or theory) 250, 253, 258

Indirect Effects Model (proposed model) 250

Interactive Systems Framework for Dissemination and Implementation (ISF) 72

Intervention Mapping Framework 65
Involvement-Resistance Model 146

Knowledge, attitude and practice/behavior change models (KAPB) 47

Media Entertainment Theory 179

Media Practice Model 24

Media Strategy and Christian Witness 84

Media Theory 207

Mediated Human Behavior Change Model 206, 253

Mental Models Approach 169

Model and Reinforcement to Combat HIV/AIDS (MARCH) 45, 72, 73, 74, 133, 159, 164, 171, 199

Model of Loss and Grief 112

Morphology of Folktale 255

Narrative Theory 181, 255

Network Analysis/Network Modeling Approach 40

Objectification Theory 208

Parasocial Interaction (PSI) 36, 84, 86, 104, 105, 117, 123, 124, 132, 147, 155, 162, 163, 188, 196, 205, 210, 211, 223, 228, 229, 237, 248, 249, 252, 263, 282

Participatory Action Research (PAR) 114

Participatory Communication and Reception Theory 268

Participatory Communication Framework 56

Participatory Communication strategies 219

Participatory model 268
Participatory theories (as a group) 280
Pedagogy of the Oppressed 198
Perceived Behavior Control 10
Performance-centered pedagogy 198
Performance Theory 198, 208
Personal Efficacy 245
Persuasion Theory 242
Positive Deviance (PD) 80
Precaution Adoption Process Model 88
Prevention Delivery System 72
Prevention Support System 72
Propensity Score Matching 54
Pseudo-Gemeinshaft 205, 252
Reception Theory 188, 268
Redline Strategy 260
Referential Involvement 162
Sabido
  Approach 223
  Methodology 13
Selective Processing Theory 60
Sex Script Theory 101
Shannon-Weaver model 280
Six-stage Model of Communication Effects (proposed theory) 250, 273

Situated Learning Theory 113

Social Change

First-order 225

Second-order 225


Social diffusion model 11, 12

Social Judgment Theory 250

Social Learning Theory (SLT) 1, 33, 68, 86, 109, 135, 143, 144, 163, 172, 186, 188, 190, 205, 210, 211, 229, 232, 250, 263, 265, 266, 272, 273, 280, 282, 287, 289

see also Social Cognitive Theory

Social Modeling Theory 229

Soul City Edutainment Model 268

Soul City Model of Social and Behavioral Change (SCM) 68, 250

Speech Act Theory 198

Spiral of Silence Theory 208

Stage of Behavior Change (SBC) 135

Stages of Change Model (SOC) 242, 250, 273, 278
Steps to Behavior Change

Framework 110, 250

Model 253

Structural Equation Modeling (SEM) 54 104, 123, 145, 179, 245, 251

Syntony Theory 37

Theory-of-Change (ToC) 94

Theory of Collective Unconscious 36, 211

Theory of Communicative Action 93, 261 263

Theory of Identification 262, 263

Theory of Myths and Archetypes 33

Theory of Planned Behavior 9, 10, 99, 242, 250

Theory of Power as Knowledge Participation in Change 101

Theory of Reasoned Action 47, 88, 166, 242, 250, 278, 284

Theory of the Public Sphere 138

Theory of Self-Efficacy 47

Theory of Social Change 261

Theory of Tones 250

Three E Model: Entertainment, Emotion, and Education 157

Transactive Memory Systems (TMS) 197

Transportation-Imagery Model 65, 88

Trans-theoretical Model 79

Transtheoretical Model of Change 171, 286
Transtheoretical/Stages of Change Model of Behavior Change 278

Triune Brain Theory 36, 211, 222, 229

Two-Step Flow Model 250, 253, 266

Uses and gratifications 207, 250

Whole Society Strategy 192

Thesis 50, 53, 84, 139, 167

see also Dissertation

Third Person Effect 250

Third world development 26, 29, 32, 57, 189, 202, 227, 238

Transportation see Narrative

Typology 115

Uncategorized (literature not available for review at time of publication) 30, 31, 45, 102, 129, 152, 173, 174, 175, 178, 185, 193, 204, 209, 221, 230, 233, 234, 240, 241, 246, 257, 267, 270, 274, 275

Unintended consequences 35

Archie Bunker effect 229, 235

Violence 62, 162, 271

Against women 86

Virtual agent 99, 100

Visual narrative see Narrative

Voice (e.g. power) 57, 58

Women
see also People Group

Women’s health see Target Messages

Studies 86, 160, 200

Zone of proximal development 181
## Table 2-3

### Bibliography of Entertainment-Education Publications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Harris, R. J., Cady, E. T., &amp; Tran, T. Q. (2006). Comprehension and memory. In J. Bryant &amp; P. Vorderer (Eds.), <em>Psychology of entertainment</em> (pp. 71-84). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Assoc Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Table 2-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation Number</th>
<th>Citation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>broadcasting: Assessment of a local radio project. *Health Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Journal*, 56(1), 51-63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>analysis of media effects.* (Doctoral dissertation). The University of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>New Mexico, United States -- New Mexico. Retrieved from Dissertations &amp;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Theses: Full Text. (Publication No. AAT 9930419)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Communication Theory</em>, 12(2), 153-172.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>Sood, S., Menard, T., &amp; Witte, K. (2004). The theory behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Entertainment-Education</em>. In A. Singhal, M. J. Cody, E. M. Rogers &amp; M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sabido (Eds.), *Entertainment-education and social change: History,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>components of a behavior change communication campaign on HIV/AIDS in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>North India. <em>Journal of Health Communication</em>, 11, 143-162.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>letter-writers to a popular Entertainment-Education soap opera in India.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Around Together': An examination of radio listening groups in Fulbari,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mass media campaign on HIV/AIDS knowledge and behavior change in North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>India: Results from a longitudinal study. <em>Asian Journal of Communication</em>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16(3), 231-250.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>content into narratives for mass consumption. *National Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Association Annual Meeting*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>promote moral and spiritual values: A case study of <em>A Message to the</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Conscience</em> (1964--2004). (Doctoral dissertation). Regent University,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>United States -- Virginia. Retrieved from Dissertations &amp; Theses: Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Text. (Publication No. AAT 3164921)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>study of the effects of the &quot;Karate Kids&quot; AIDS film in Thailand.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Doctoral dissertation). Ohio University, United States -- Ohio. Retrieved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>from Dissertations &amp; Theses: Full Text. (Publication No. AAT 9614314)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>287</td>
<td>Wilson, K. E., &amp; Beck, V. H. (2002). Entertainment Outreach for Women's Health at CDC. <em>Journal of Women's Health &amp; Gender-Based Medicine, 11</em>(7), 575-578.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citation Number</td>
<td>Citation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4A
*Entertainment-Education Interventions Alphabetized by Title.* Entertainment products designed specifically to teach a target concept or communicate a specific message (short run Entertainment-Education storylines in existing television programs are provided in Table 2-4B).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Start Year</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Target Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>1927</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>history; geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>1939</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>agriculture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earlier yet later</td>
<td>France</td>
<td></td>
<td>short film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At dance</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td></td>
<td>short film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A Child Is Crying There</em></td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>documentary</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A Family History</em></td>
<td>Appalachian region, United States</td>
<td></td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>one-act plays</td>
<td>diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A Flat in Downtown</em></td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>pro-social</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A Rainha do Sucata</em></td>
<td>The Rubbish Queen</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A Story about Toni, Mike, and Valerie</em></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>multi-media</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A Woman in Transition</em></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>theater</td>
<td></td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aahat</em></td>
<td>Pakistan</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Accompaname</em></td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1977</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>AIDS: The Hidden Enemy</em></td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aik Hi Rastha</em></td>
<td>Pakistan</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>gender equality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Akarumwa Nechekuchera</em></td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alam Simsim</td>
<td>(Egyptian version of Sesame Street)</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>children's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alang-Alang</td>
<td>Wild grass</td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amakhosi</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amra Dujon</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bangladesh</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ana Zananna</td>
<td>I am grouchy</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>spot campaign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrea: Time for Love</td>
<td></td>
<td>Peru</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angel Baby</td>
<td></td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apwe Plezi</td>
<td>After the pleasure comes the pain</td>
<td>St. Lucia</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archers, The</td>
<td></td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>1951</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashreat Al Amal</td>
<td>Sails of hope</td>
<td>Sudan</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashreut Al Mal</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sudan</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aurat</td>
<td>Woman</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baixing</td>
<td>Ordinary people</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berdel</td>
<td></td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhoma</td>
<td></td>
<td>India</td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bienvenida Salud!</td>
<td>Welcome to health!</td>
<td>Peruvian Amazon</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodylove</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bor Holo, Dor Kholo</td>
<td>It's dawn, open your door</td>
<td>Bangladesh</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But Mother...</td>
<td></td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butir Butir Pasir Di Laut</td>
<td>Grains of sand in the sea</td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>1977</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caminemos</td>
<td>Let's walk together</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the Rules</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>film</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chuyen Que Minh</td>
<td>My homeland</td>
<td>Vietnam</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cock Crow at Dawn</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consequences</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costa!</td>
<td></td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuando Estemos Juntos</td>
<td>When we are together</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>rock music video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut Your Coat According to Your Cloth</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damakegne ou la Juste Mesure</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mali</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dehleez</td>
<td>Threshold</td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designated Driver Campaign</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>campaign</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhimbiba</td>
<td>Getting the best out of life</td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DramAidE</td>
<td></td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td></td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dulcinina</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>1967</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egyptian ORT campaign, The</td>
<td></td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>spot campaign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eighth Day of the Week</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Asesino Invisible</td>
<td>Invisible assassin</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td></td>
<td>comic book</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Carruaje</td>
<td>The carriage</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1970</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Combate</td>
<td>The battle</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Regalo de Salud</td>
<td>Gift of health</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>spot campaign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Sexto Sentido</td>
<td>The sixth sense</td>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enfrentate</td>
<td>Stop and think</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>sexual responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equatorial Trilogy</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face to Face</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>television</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fakube Jarra</td>
<td>Wise man</td>
<td>Gambia</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Famili Blong Serah</td>
<td>Sarah's family</td>
<td>Vanuatu</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family House, The</td>
<td></td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family Oudenrijn</td>
<td></td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>comedy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forewarned is Foretold</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td></td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaon Se Shahar Tak</td>
<td>From village to city</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>Theater for Empowerment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ghaanti Heri Haad Nilaun</td>
<td>Bite only what you can swallow</td>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4A (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Start Year</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Target Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Haath Se Haath Milaa</em></td>
<td>Hand in hand together</td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>reality tv</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Handle with Care?</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hatyaare</em></td>
<td>Killers</td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>Theater for Empowerment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hawwa Ki Beti</em></td>
<td>Daughter of Eve</td>
<td>Pakistan</td>
<td></td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>pro-development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Heart and Soul</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>multiple</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>High Stakes</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td></td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>alcoholism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hillcrest</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hope Was Always There</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hopeful Village</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>1963</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>integrated rural development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hum Log</em></td>
<td>We people</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>gender equality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hum Raahi</em></td>
<td>Fellow Travelers</td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Target Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Humraahi</em></td>
<td>Come along with me</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>status of women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Immersion Institute's Exploration: Sea Lions</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>immersive</td>
<td>science education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>In a Lighter Mood</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Iron Will</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sahel region, Africa</td>
<td></td>
<td>short film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS prevention; condom use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>It's Not Easy</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Jan Natya Manch</em></td>
<td>People's Theater Forum</td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>street theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Jasoos Vijay</em></td>
<td>Detective Vijay</td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Jeevan Saurabh</em></td>
<td>Fragrance of Life</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>teen issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Journey of Life</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-4A (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Start Year</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Target Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kalajatha</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>performance</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>malaria control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karate Kids</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ke Wang</td>
<td>Aspirations</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>social issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kembang untuk Nur</td>
<td>Flower for Nur</td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>mini-series</td>
<td>maternal mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khushi Ko Sansar</td>
<td>Happy world</td>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>children with disabilities</td>
<td>disabilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koko Close</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kotebra</td>
<td>Mali</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>history of Mexico</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La antorcha encendida</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La Constitucion</td>
<td>The constitution</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1969</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>Mexico's constitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La Tormenta</td>
<td>The storm</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1967</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>French invasion of Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacos de Familia</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>health education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ladrón de Corazones</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>breast cancer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lawsons, The</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>1944</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Target Message</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lazos de Sangre</strong></td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Life at the Mimosa Hotel</strong></td>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>1984</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>promote tourism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Life Challenge</strong></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td></td>
<td>new media</td>
<td>computer game</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lilin-Lilin di Depan</strong></td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>maternal mortality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Los Caudillos</strong></td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1968</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>Mexican struggle for independence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Los Hijos de Nadie</strong></td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>plight of street children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lotus on Muddy Lake</strong></td>
<td>Cambodia</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS prevention</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Love in Jail</strong></td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>pro-social</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lucille</strong></td>
<td>Appalachian region, United States</td>
<td></td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>one-act plays</td>
<td>diabetes in Appalachian region of the U.S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Machine</strong></td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>Theater for Empowerment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Target Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maisha</strong></td>
<td>That's Life</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Makgabaneng</strong></td>
<td>A rocky place</td>
<td>Botswana</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malhacao</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>teen issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mama Olu</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>spot campaign</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>McSpoons Family, The</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td></td>
<td>puppetry</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>reduce television viewing time of families</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medisch Centrum West</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>health education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meena</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>animated</td>
<td>gender equality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meet the Montoyas</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td></td>
<td>Internet</td>
<td>fotonovela</td>
<td>diabetes education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meu Bem Querer</strong></td>
<td>My sweetheart</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moolaade</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>female genital cutting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mopani Junction</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4A (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Start Year</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Target Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More Time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ms. Rumors</td>
<td></td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td></td>
<td>street theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulero</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td></td>
<td>print</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulher</td>
<td>Women</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>reality tv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nalamdana</td>
<td>Are you well?</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naseberry Street</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>1985</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neighbors</td>
<td></td>
<td>Israel</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>comedy</td>
<td>Arab-Jewish friendship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>gender equality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never Too Late</td>
<td></td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>religious education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nggimpyo! Exclamion mark</td>
<td></td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>literacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nijaat</td>
<td>Deliverance</td>
<td>Pakistan</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nosotras las Mujeres</td>
<td>We the women</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>status of women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nshilakamona</td>
<td>I have not see it</td>
<td>Zambia</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nunl Dduhyo!</td>
<td>Open your eyes!</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>reality tv</td>
<td>organ donation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4A (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Start Year</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Target Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oppassen</td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>family comedy</td>
<td>environmental education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oshin</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our Neighbors, Ourselves</td>
<td>Burundi</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palm Tree Climber, The</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td></td>
<td>television film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>Schistosomiasis prevention; pro-social</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passion of the Christ, The</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>religious education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perro Amor</td>
<td>Puppy love</td>
<td>Colombia</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phir Milenge</td>
<td>We will meet again</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite Society</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td></td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td></td>
<td>sexual responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Por Amor</td>
<td>For love</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Que Mihn Xanh Mai</td>
<td>Forever green my homeland</td>
<td>Vietnam</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Que Pasa, USA?</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1978</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radionovela da Camisinha</td>
<td>Radio soap opera</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>1978</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raymond, the Sprayman</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>1959</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rruga MePisha</td>
<td>Pine Street</td>
<td>Albania</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sangre Joven</td>
<td>Young blood</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>television film</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sauvons des Vies</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mali</td>
<td></td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret of Production</td>
<td></td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4A (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Start Year</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Target Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secret of the Land</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>agriculture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senda de gloria</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>history of Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Brings Reward</td>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>serial</td>
<td>health care worker education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexto Sentido</td>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>social change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shabuj Chaya</td>
<td>Bangladesh</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared Hope</td>
<td>Sahel region, Africa</td>
<td></td>
<td>short film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS prevention; condom use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shin Dong-Yub &amp; Nam Hee-Suk’s Man II Man</td>
<td>South Korea</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>reality tv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shop, The</td>
<td>Sahel region, Africa</td>
<td></td>
<td>short film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS prevention; condom use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIDA dans la Cite</td>
<td>Cote d'Ivoire</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4A (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Start Year</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Target Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simplye Maria</td>
<td>Simply Maria</td>
<td>Peru</td>
<td>1969</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somos Diferentes, Somos Iguales</td>
<td>We're different, we're equal</td>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td></td>
<td>multimedia</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>social change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonamoni</td>
<td>Golden pearl</td>
<td>Bangladesh</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>oral rehydration therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soul City</td>
<td></td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>radio and television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>health education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soul City IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>radio and television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>domestic violence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sparrows Don't Migrate</td>
<td></td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting Over</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>stigma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stella</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>1967</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>murder mystery</td>
<td>social issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sterling Towers</td>
<td></td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suami SIAGA, The I'm an alert husband</td>
<td></td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>maternal mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Target Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugar Bear</td>
<td>Appalachian region, United States</td>
<td>theater one-act plays</td>
<td>diabetes in Appalachian region of the U.S.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugar Plays, The</td>
<td>Appalachian region, United States</td>
<td>theater one-act plays</td>
<td>diabetes in Appalachian region of the U.S.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super Book</td>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>television animated</td>
<td>religious education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taru</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>2002 radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>family planning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tembea Na Majira</td>
<td>Move with the times</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>1996 radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>social issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinka Tinka Sukh</td>
<td>Happiness lies in small things</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>1996 radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>family planning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torre de Babel</td>
<td>Tower of Babel</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tres hombres Sin Fronteras</td>
<td>Three men without borders</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1990 radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsha Tsha</td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>television drama</td>
<td>pro-social</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tushauriane</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>1987 television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>family planning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Target Message</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Twaalf Steden, Dertien Ongelukken</em></td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>docu-drama</td>
<td>traffic safety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Twende na Wakati</em></td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>family planning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Uga Uga</em></td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Umubanyi Niwe Muryang</em></td>
<td>Burundi</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>peaceful co-existence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Un Mensaje a la Conciencia</em></td>
<td>El Salvador</td>
<td>1964</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td></td>
<td>moral and spiritual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>messages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Urunana</em></td>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ushikwapo Shikamana; Ushikwapo Shikimana</em></td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>family planning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vagina Monologues, The</em></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td></td>
<td>theater</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>violence against women</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>English Translation</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Start Year</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Target Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vamos Juntos</em></td>
<td>When we are together</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1979</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>responsible parenting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ven Conmigo</em></td>
<td>Come with me</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>1975</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>literacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Villa Borghese</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>health education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Villa Madalena</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Warrior Marks</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Africa, multiple countries</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>female genital cutting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Way of Life Show</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td></td>
<td>television</td>
<td>sports game show</td>
<td>health education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>What the Sea Says</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td></td>
<td>film</td>
<td>musical</td>
<td>pro-social</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Wila/Yawa Kasta</em></td>
<td>Ancestral bloodline</td>
<td>Bolivia</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Yamba-Songo: Les Cle de la Vie</em></td>
<td>Keys to life</td>
<td>West Africa</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>social issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Yeh Kahan Aa Gaye Hum</em></td>
<td>Where have we arrived?</td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>environmental education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Yeken Kignit</em></td>
<td>Looking over one's daily life</td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>reproductive health</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4A (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Start Year</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Target Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yellow Card</td>
<td>Africa, multiple countries</td>
<td>film</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>sexual responsibility</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo Amo a Paquita Gallego</td>
<td>I love Paquita Gallego</td>
<td>Colombia</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>telenovela</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth for Real</td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td>performance</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zeg eens A</td>
<td>The Netherlands</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>health education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zimachitika</td>
<td>Malawi</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>social issues</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinduka!</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>family planning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4B
*Short Run Entertainment-Education Storylines in Existing Television Programs.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Episode Name (provided by source publication)</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Storyline subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>7th Heaven</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>All in the Family</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>prejudice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>All My Children</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>bone marrow donation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Beverly Hills, 90120</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>skin cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bold and the Beautiful, The</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Chicago Hope</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crossroads</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>health education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>CSI: NY</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>organ donation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Days of Our Lives</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ER</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;You don't cut into cancer&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ER</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>syphilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ER</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>cervical cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Man with no name&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>breast Cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>General Hospital</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Girlfriends</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS education</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4B (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Episode Name (provided by source publication)</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Storyline subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Goode Behavior</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey's Anatomy</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>organ donation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey's Anatomy &quot;Let it be&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growing Pains</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>drunk driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guiding Light</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Happy Days</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>get a library card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Incident</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>House</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>organ donation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John Laroquette Show, The</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maude</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>abortion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr. Rogers' Neighborhood</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>children's television</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Two Dads</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>drunk driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nick Freno</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numb3rs</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>organ donation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NYPD Blue</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OC, The</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>teen pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabrina the Teenage Witch</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Savannah</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesame Street</td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>children's</td>
<td>education</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-4B (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Episode Name (provided by source publication)</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Storyline subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Step by Step</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>situation comedy</td>
<td>immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>thirtysomething</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Young and the Restless, The</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>breast cancer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER III
MANUSCRIPT #2:
DEVELOPMENT OF THE ABEE MODEL

Introduction

The use of popular culture tools for education is not a new concept (Apple & Apple, 1993; Barbara, 2007; Engstrom, 1995; Hinds, 1991; Lacayo & Singhal, 2008; Morgan, 2001). Americans growing up in the 1970s may remember the popular Saturday morning cartoon series Schoolhouse Rock (Yohe, 1973) teaching a variety of concepts from how adverbs work in a sentence to how a legislative bill is made into law. Others may remember the 1990s PBS game show Where in the World Is Carmen Sandiego? (Blumenthal, Curley, & Calderwood, 1991) focusing on basic geography knowledge, e.g. world capitals and landmarks. Examples like these may qualify as Entertainment-Education (E-E) since they are forms of entertainment developed with the intention to teach, however in a review of literature indexed in scholarly databases (Simms, 2010a) no articles about either of these shows were found when queried using the keyword “Entertainment-Education.” This absence may be explained by the traditional focus of E-E researchers and practitioners on communicating health messages and illustrates the gap in research which the present article seeks to address.

Regardless of the message, the power of E-E resides in its ability to present positive and negative role models to influence viewers in the adoption of activities impacting their health. This ability is facilitated through the power of narrative to touch
human emotions and resonate through identifiable characters (Singhal, Cody, et al., 2004b). Originally informed by Bandura’s Social Learning Theory and its second generation Social Cognitive Theory (SCT), E-E utilizes role-modeling as a trigger for learning (Bandura, 2004) or as Slater (2002) characterizes it, through persuasion and social influence to explain the influential force of E-E to impact behavior in viewers. Behavioral change is beyond the scope of the present discussion but the connection between mechanisms for behavioral change theories and education research in learning theories would be an important area for future research. Instead, I wish to build upon current approaches of E-E to expand into the realm of academic learning by analyzing a successful entertainment product that comes close to the definition of E-E geared towards academic learning. This analysis is used to form a model for Academically-based Entertainment-Education (ABEE). To begin, I provide a background of E-E. Next, I introduce the development of the ABEE model through a grounded theory approach analyzing a successful television series that integrated mathematic concepts into its narrative engine.

**Background of Entertainment-Education and Use in Geography Education**

*Non-formal environment supporting formal education*

Both informal and non-formal education serve as vehicles for life-long learning (La Belle, 1982). Currently, the terms are used interchangeably; however it should be noted that there is differentiation between the terms. Informal education can be defined as learning that takes place outside of the structured classroom environment and in incidental day-to-day experiences (Scibner & Cole, 1973; M. Smith, 2005; M. K. Smith,
Non-formal education composes the more intentional learning experiences one might find in museums or other entertainment-based venues (M. Smith, 2005; M. K. Smith, 2001). Using these definitions, an example of informal education may be found in a child accompanying a parent on a fishing trip and learning how to cast a line as they talk about life. Non-formal education examples related to geography may be found in the National Geographic cable television network (National Geographic, 2009), which provides programming primarily in a documentary-styled format. The recently announced Internet-delivered program *Geospatial Revolution* (Penn State Public Broadcasting, 2009) appears to follow in similar style by leading the viewer through an exploration of the technology and impact of geospatial technologies on current and future lives. On the other end of the program format spectrum are children's shows such as *Dora the Explorer* (Madden, Conrad, McWane, & Chialtas, 2000) and *Where in the World is Carmen Sandiego?* (Blumenthal, Curley, & Calderwood, 1991), both of which ended production years ago. Programs such as these present a single-dimensional treatment of geography education with the former delving into spatial vocabulary (such as near vs. far, inside vs. outside, etc.) and the latter presenting what one might remember from middle school geography such as the capitals of countries and their exports.

Despite efforts by geography education researchers to move school geography in the United States beyond rote memorization of place names and disconnected facts, a movement begun by Arnold Guyot in the late 1800s, the trend has not translated to non-formal venues as evidenced by programs such as *Carmen Sandiego* or the televised
National Geography Bee competition. In my opinion, there is a critical need for examples of full spectrum geography which demonstrate how what happens “over there” affects what happens “here.” Without the context provided by the principles of patterns and processes that are the life blood of the discipline, learning experiences become dry, dull, and utterly forgettable. Packaging geography education in a game show or a TV cartoon does build into the experience some level of engagement, but what if we could engage students – either child or adult, traditional or life-long learner – with geography concepts (or concepts from any academic discipline) in a deeper way? What if a tool existed to impact geographic literacy at a societal scale? The field of Entertainment-Education (E-E) has the potential to provide just that. Instead of telling a story about a subject, person, or phenomenon, such as in documentary-styled offerings or carrying the more traditional instructional feel of the children’s educational genre, E-E turns these approaches inside out and weaves an educational message into and throughout a fictional narrative. In other words, the story is not about the concept, serving solely as story context. Instead, the concept drives the story and serves as the story’s engine. With a prior emphasis of E-E in impacting behavior of intended audiences, academic concepts have not been a focus of the field. Therefore, the driving question for the present discussion revolves around the question, “How might Entertainment-Education be used to teach academic subjects?”

Entertainment-Education (E-E)

As a specific form of non-formal education, Entertainment-Education (E-E) has been used as a strategy in numerous countries and regions around the world to educate
viewers on concepts impacting a variety of social problems. For example, E-E interventions have been used to promote family planning in Tanzania (Poindexter, 2004) and Pakistan (Piotrow & de Fossard, 2004); to reduce infant mortality rates due to dehydration in Egypt (R. A. Abdulla, 2004); to model a non-confrontational intervention to stop instances of domestic violence in South Africa (Usdin, Singhal, Shongwe, Goldstein, & Shabalala, 2004); and to promote gender equality in countries throughout southeastern Asia (McKee, Aghi, & Shahzadi, 2004; Singhal, Sharma, Papa, & Witte, 2004). In most cases to date, E-E interventions have been in the form of radio or television soap operas centered on the target message, however, the examples available in the literature do not currently reflect the broad definition of E-E, characterized by noted E-E researcher Dr. Arvind Singhal as “shaped by intentionality [to teach]” (Personal communication, December 3, 2009). Currently, the field of E-E is dominated by examples of radio and television interventions developed to communicate health-related information and practices in mostly Third World countries.

In the United States, E-E faces significant challenges for implementation possibly due to the steep cost of media production and the complexities of a media-saturated society. In recent years, several partnerships have formed between academically-based organizations (such as the Hollywood, Health & Society based at the University of Southern California) or the federal government (such as the Centers for Disease Control) and Hollywood to integrate health messages into storylines of existing entertainment products. For example, episodes of ER were written in cooperation with health education specialists to communicate the “5 a day” fruits and vegetable message.
for healthy eating (Valente, 2007) and the importance of childhood immunization (Glik, et al., 1998). Another example may be found in the show *thirtysomething* when viewers followed the story arc of one of the main character’s battle with breast cancer, a first of its kind in the 1980s (Sharf, Freimuth, Greenspon, & Plotnick, 1996). Interestingly, child-oriented examples, such as *Schoolhouse Rock* (Warburton, 1973), have not appeared in E-E literature yet fit the definition of E-E, i.e. having the intentionality to teach (Engstrom, 1995).

Regardless of the country of origin or destination, E-E seeks behavioral change in its target audiences. Based primarily in Bandura’s Social Cognitive Theory (Sood, Menard, & Witte, 2004), E-E makes its impact through social modeling, whereby we learn from the successes or mistakes of others (Bandura, 2004) by modeling target messages using positive, negative, and transitional models. As Bandura (2004, pp. 83-84) explains:

> Characters representing relevant segments of the viewing population are shown adopting the beneficial attitudes and behavioral patterns. Seeing people similar to themselves change their lives for the better not only conveys strategies for how to do it, but raises television viewers’ sense of efficacy that they too can succeed….The personal and social benefits of the favorable practices, and the costs of the detrimental ones, are vividly portrayed.

Some educational research scholars posit that all learning, including academic leaning, is social. For example, Gardner (2004) frames both social and academic learning as a process of changing one’s mind, a change which can be ignited by emotional resonance
through other’s experiences. Dewey (1938) argues the most impactful learning comes through experience while Vygotsky (1978) framed learning as culturally mediated and assisted through social interaction. If one accepts a view of learning as a socially mediated act, it should follow that E-E, an intervention which models learning and social behavior, could be used to model the learning of academic concepts by creating vicarious and situated learning experiences through fictional narratives.

It is within this context that I investigate how E-E can be adapted and used for academic learning in general, producing what I am calling the Academically-based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) model, and further modified or customized for geography education in the United States. This research carries the potential for greater implications not only to affect the collective geographic knowledge of U.S. society, but also contribute to the strengthening of the connection and bi-directional support between formal and informal/non-formal education (La Belle, 1982).

**Developing the Academically-Based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) Model**

Understanding how an academically-based E-E (ABEE) product might be constructed requires an understanding of how narrative functions in traditional entertainment products. Such an understanding involves the anatomy of story structure, especially for film and television entertainment products. I suggest the key to creating ABEE resides in the use of story structure to communicate academic concepts through the language of the medium. In this section, I discuss the narrative basis for a potential ABEE model, learning through a narrative structure, and rationale for using grounded theory for the model development.
**Similar yet different: E-E and ABEE**

Using the narrative conventions of traditional radio, film, and television, E-E interventions have been primarily in the genre of soap operas, *telenovelas*, and other variations of dramas for approximately 30 years. At the heart of film and television writing is story structure rooted in Aristotelian poetics (Bordwell, 2008; Tierno, 2002). The critical component of this style of writing is the use of plot points, an action or event which changes the direction of the story. I suggest that the key to development of ABEE resides in the use of plot points to deliver academic concepts. This format will make the academic concept an integral part of the story as opposed to simply providing context. I further suggest that this integration will be essential for the educational efficacy of the ABEE product. This will also differentiate ABEE from traditional educational television, the latter which generally “emphasize[s] formal, classroom instruction and enrichment programming” (Zechowski, n.d.). By placing academic concepts within a fictional narrative and providing the distinctive “feel” of commercial television programs, ABEE creates a learning environment which integrates academic concepts into the language of the medium instead of simply using the medium as a delivery tool. However, since traditional E-E has not focused on academic concepts, there is to date no formula or model for creating ABEE. In fact, no examples can be found in the E-E literature that could qualify as ABEE. Candidates for ABEE have been found incidentally outside of the E-E literature, such as a regional game show about Pennsylvania history (Hinds, 1991) or the 1970s Saturday morning cartoon series *Schoolhouse Rock*. Both of these examples educate using the language of their respective mediums. However, while these
examples performed well with their target audiences, it is unclear how successfully
either genre truly educated their consumers, and indeed such assessment is beyond the
scope of this discussion.

I posit that extending E-E into a larger role as a teaching vehicle will require a
vehicle with broader audience appeal than these examples provide. Therefore, due to a
dearth of E-E examples having achieved popular consumption by American audiences or
attainment as iconic pop culture status, it will be necessary to draw from the commercial
entertainment industry to identify existing products having the potential to teach an
academic subject in order to inform the development of my ABEE model. Thus, the
analysis presented here will provide the data needed to construct a theory for ABEE. By
using a grounded theory approach, whereby theory is developed from data, I will be able
to adapt the model for the discipline-specific approach needed for geography-based
ABEE products.

**ABEE model development**

A key component of this investigation is the identification of an entertainment
product such as a television series that communicates science through a fictional
narrative. I am focusing on fictional narratives since they form the heart of traditional E-
E, as opposed to documentary-styled products which have a narrative structure but blurs
the line between fact and fiction (see for example Nichols, 1983, 1988). Fictional
narratives also provide an environment through which an emotional connection with
viewers may be more easily made, compared to traditional educational television’s
instructional context. This emotional connection is posited as a vital component for
effecting lasting cognitive changes as argued by authors such as Gardner (1993; 2004) and Gladwell (2000). Gardner counts both logical and affective factors among the list of influencers causing mind change. He argues that these factors are successful because of the types of content the mind accepts: ideas, concepts, stories, theories, and skills. The stronger these factors connect with the mind’s receptive triggers, not only increases the likelihood that one’s mind will change (e.g. adopt the new view) but makes the change more durable. In Gladwell’s terminology, the concept becomes “sticky.”

E-E researchers have capitalized on what Gardner characterizes as mind change through the use of narrative entertainment, the structure of which provides opportunities for academic concepts to be integrated in ways that may promote learning. In general, film and television fictional narratives follow a writing convention rooted in the Aristotelian story structure of the “Hero’s Journey,” or some derivation of the concept, whereby the protagonist (the Hero) faces a crisis which propels him or her on a journey in order to resolve the problem. Along the way, there are twists in the plot, known as plot points (PP), which redirect the protagonist into seemingly impossible situations. The protagonist solves the problem, bringing an end to the journey and closure for the audience.

E-E has successfully utilized this storytelling technique to impact negative social behaviors in countries around the world. E-E interventions, primarily radio and television dramas, have been used to promote family planning in Tanzania (Poindexter, 2004) and Pakistan (Piotrow & de Fossard, 2004); to reduce infant mortality rates due to dehydration in Egypt (R. A. Abdulla, 2004); to model non-confrontational intervention
to stop instances of domestic violence in South Africa (Usdin, et al., 2004); and to promote gender equality in countries throughout the southeastern Asia region (McKee, et al., 2004; Singhal, Sharma, et al., 2004). While E-E is rooted in Bandura’s Social Cognitive Theory explicating changes in behavior are facilitated by viewing models of the target behavior, there has been little focus on academic learning by theorists outside of a treatment of group dynamics in the learning environment. This may be due to the differences in perspectives on the term “context.” Cobb & Bowers (1999) elucidate the differences between two schools of thought. On one side are the cognitive theorists, concerned with the individual’s internal cognition where learning is influenced by the context of the individual. On the other side are situated learning theorists who are concerned with the individual within the larger social group, where learning is influenced by the larger context. Social Cognitive Theory (SCT) provides a bridge between the two, by revealing how learning is influenced by the emotional connection facilitated by the transport of the viewer to the virtual context of the fictional narrative. The emotional connection facilitated by the narrative bridges the internal and external forces acting upon the learner/viewer to facilitate cognitive changes. Said another way, the life history of the viewer influences how the viewer connects with the narrative and it is this force against which the E-E narrative must compete. If the narrative has a strong enough resonance to overcome the viewer’s prior experience, there will be a cognitive change, or in Howard Gardner’s terms, a “mind change.” Again, these terms refer to behavioral changes. Further research is needed to determine if such mind change can be facilitated for academic learning. However, the absence of such research does not
prevent the analysis I am conducting here. Since we have evidence of the impact traditional E-E methodology has had on behavioral outcomes and we have an understanding of the role narrative plays in these changes, we can look to research in learning which incorporates basic narrative structure to gain insight into expanding the E-E methodology to facilitate academic learning.

**Learning using a narrative structure**

Bjork and colleague’s (R.A. Bjork, 1994; 2007; Robert A. Bjork & Richardson-Klavehn, 1989) investigation of interleaving teaching strategy resonates with Aristotelian approach to story structure. This teaching style, which Bjork (2007) terms “blocking and massing,” interrupts instruction on the target concept by introducing non-target concepts. Experiments comparing learning by traditional instructional technique of presenting the concept in discrete units revealed the interleaved approach was significantly more effective based on student subject memory retention. The on-target/off-target instructional approach resembles the story structure of the Hero’s journey in that as he/she travels through a challenge to find the resolution to the conflict or problem, unexpected challenges derail him or her from getting to the goal and against which the Hero must fight to get back on track. The derailment metaphorically maps to the transition between a block and mass portion of Bjork’s design. Coming from the opposite end of the spectrum, we can also see the intentional and direct application of story structure to develop learning experiences through a model of instruction presented by instructional designers for the construction of classroom learning experiences (Parrish, 2008). In this approach, the student is seen as the Hero and the journey as the
learning process. Students are scaffolded, i.e. supported in their learning, toward plot
twists that challenge what they know, propelling the student to deeper learning in order
to solve the new challenge.

The research described below more fully investigates the role of story structure
(Bordwell, 1986; Field, 2005; Tierno, 2002) in developing learning experiences through
the methodology of Entertainment-Education. Several television series meet my
definition of an ABEE intervention described previously. The U.S. television series
franchise *The Voyage of the Mimi* and *The Second Voyage of the Mimi*, broadcast on
PBS in the 1980s, presented science in the context of the story of a boy who spends his
summer with his seafaring and whale researching grandfather. During their travels, they
must use science to escape danger and solve other problems. Viewers watch the science
unfold as the story unfolds in a 15 minute drama paired with a 15 minute documentary-
styled “excursion” in which the actors, no longer in character, visit the real locations
addressed in the drama. Written for a target audience of middle school students, these
two series were designed with the intention of teaching through a drama, and therefore
can be included in the E-E category. Created by the Bank Street College of Education, a
private graduate school in New York City, the series used a constructivist approach
through which to teach.

A second potential ABEE program ran in the decade prior to the *Mimi* series. The
musical cartoon series *Schoolhouse Rock* aired on Saturday mornings between popular
animated shows. *Schoolhouse Rock* was born when New York advertising executive
David McCall noticed his pre-teen son could easily remember the lyrics to rock songs
but struggled with his times tables (Engstrom, 1995). Using the advertising tool of the “jingle,” McCall effectively created a teaching aid that set the times tables to music while telling a simple story (i.e. created a context). For example, the *Multiplication Rock* episode “Two, Elementary, My Dear” teaches counting by two’s as Noah puts animals on the ark. In “I’ve Got Six,” Motown provides the musical context creating the learning experience. One of the most visually memorable scenes can be found in “Figure Eight” when the number “8” rotates onto its side to form the symbol for infinity (Engstrom, 1995). The three minute episodes aired several times during Saturday morning cartoon programming block and were viewed by millions of American children during *Schoolhouse Rock*’s eight year run. These children, now adults, not only remember the lyrics 20 and 30 years hence, but are introducing them to their children through DVDs.

Just how powerful was the impression made by *Schoolhouse Rock* on American youth? Engstrom (1995, pp. 101-102) provides examples reported by the series producers: a teenager at the beach sings the Preamble to the Constitution; 900 Dartmouth college students serenade one of the executive producers who was a guest speaker in 1990 with “Conjunction Junction;” Washington, DC agencies utilize “I’m Just a Bill” episode to teach staffers the process of a bill becoming law; immigrants credit the series with helping them pass the US citizenship exam and with learning English; and a junior high school student hums the Preamble to the Constitution during a test, using it as a mnemonic device. While research corroborates the effectiveness of music as a mnemonic device (Engstrom, 1995, p. 101), Huston, Watkins, and Kunkel point to
Schoolhouse Rock as spotlighting television’s “enormous potential for teaching academic, cognitive, and social skills” (cited in Engstrom 1995, p. 103).

Even while expressing a distaste for school, children will devour entertainment products situated in a school setting, such as the television series Beverly Hills 90210 (Spelling, 1990) or Saved by the Bell (Engel & Tenowich, 1989), or the books series by prolific British children’s authors Enid Blyton and Elsie Oxenham (Weber & Mitchell, 1995). Indeed, there are many examples of programming in recent years with educational content that resonates with students. Public Broadcasting System (PBS) programming such as Bill Nye, the Science Guy (1993), Where In The World Is Carmen Sandiego? (1991), and Wishbone (1995) were popular series in the U.S. that delivered educational content focusing on science, geography, and literature, respectively. Each show took a different narrative approach: Bill Nye demonstrated chemistry and physics concepts through experiments and explanation, in effect telling the “story” of the scientific concept; Carmen San Diego presented geography in the context of tracking an international thief in a game show format; Wishbone used the narrative of a dog who retells the life lessons and situations of his boy-owner through the fantasy re-enactment of similar situations found in literary classics.

Other examples such as Sesame Street (Cooney, 1969) and Between the Lions (Mullen, 2000) serve as touchstones of success in utilizing the visually and culturally relevant medium of television to teach literacy. In fact, research suggests the fantasy element found in these programs may be the key. An incidental lesson gleaned from one study commissioned by the head of research for Sesame Street found that very young
children lost interest in the segments where live adults and children were present without a Muppet. Interest was re-established once a Muppet entered the scene (National Literacy Trust, 2005). The story-situations presented in these programs aid learning by providing situational context needed for language to develop. Through the in situ visual demonstration of action to define vocabulary, children learn from a variety of language styles and people, including figures of speech (Davies, 1989, p. 18). Davies points to a 1976 Swedish study which demonstrated that with primary school children, pictures are more effective at demonstrating causal processes than words alone.

With such a body of previous work suggesting the role entertainment can play in education, it may not be difficult to imagine the role it can play in a specific field or subfield, such as geography education. Television in particular may prove to be an invaluable tool for this field. As a discipline, geography relies heavily on visual representations, requiring students to utilize representations in both a physical venue, such as maps and other geographic tools, as well as in their mind’s eye, such as mental maps and spatial thinking cognitive tools (National Research Council, 2006). Furthermore, vocabulary is an important part of geography education; the development of a geographic vocabulary is required for one to become geographically literate. It is therefore conceivable that programming based on models such as Sesame Street or Blue’s Clues (Kessler, 1996) could be used to develop geographic vocabulary in young children.
Mechanisms for learning

According to Harvard psychologist Howard Gardner, there are a number of “levers” that work in concert to change both individual and collective minds (Howard Gardner, 2004). These levers are important tools for changing a society’s view. In particular, the levers of Resonance (the affective component of human cognition), “Redescriptions” (representation in compatible formats), and Real World Events (events near or far that affect many individuals where they live) are prime tools for changing the collective mind of large-scale, heterogeneous groups. These levers may be used to teach concepts through the use of stories (narratives). In fact, we see this as a common phenomenon already in existence in American advertising. Through the use of a resonating “story” or concept, the viewer is “educated” on which product to purchase to obtain the goal of the “story,” usually the perception of a higher quality of life or solution to a problem.

Interestingly, the use of media to educate a society, as is the impetus of E-E, has met greater usage outside of the United States. This disparity may be due to the complicated structure of the U.S. entertainment system itself complicated by its historic shyness from products considered “educational.” As with many PBS series, entertainment products labeled “educational” generally do not receive the audience share that U.S. network broadcast series attract. Entertainment production in the U.S. requires an enormous financial investment, which may help explain why E-E targeting U.S. audiences has been limited to short run story lines over the course of a single or handful of episodes in existing television series especially soap operas (V. Beck, 2004).
However, there is one successful primetime network television series that approaches the conceptualization of E-E I use in this study. While not explicitly intended to teach mathematics but instead uses real math (Scholastic Administrator Magazine, 2006) in fictionalized contexts, the CBS television series *NUMB3RS* (Heuton & Falacci, 2005b) uses math to drive the story and therefore may provide insight into how an academic concept can be woven into the structural support of the narrative, creating a learning experience similar to what was proposed by Parrish in instructional design and serving also as a model for future ABEE products. Therefore, *NUMB3RS* serves as a model upon which a grounded theory for ABEE may be developed.

**NUMB3RS television series**

In the CBS television drama *NUMB3RS*, a genius math professor named Dr. Charles Epps assists his FBI agent brother, Don Epps, to solve crimes using advanced math techniques. When I first watched the pilot in 2005, I was intrigued by its bold use of math concepts and the choice of demonstrating the concept in an accessible way rather than a “dumbed down” approach for a non-math audience. I am admittedly a fan of the show and have seen every episode through its sixth and final season, which wrapped in mid-March 2010. While some may point to this as a potential research bias, this level of familiarity with the show made identifying its unique story mechanism possible. However, what was not evident from casual observance of the show is how this structure works. Therefore, this analysis seeks to understand how math is integrated into, and used to construct, each episode of the show.
The series’ use of math concepts to drive the story is apparent even upon casual viewing of a single episode and this characteristic comes closest to my definition of teaching *through* entertainment, by using the characteristics of the medium as the conduit for communicating a message central to the ABEE model being developed here. As a couple of the show’s writers told me, they wanted to integrate math into the story’s “DNA.” Being a part of the proverbial genetic makeup of the story, math becomes a vehicle for driving the story. To understand how this works, we first need to understand dramatic story structure.

*Dramatic story structure*

I mentioned before that, regardless of the medium, story structure follows a general form dating back to Aristotle. In teleplays, screenplays written for television, the hero’s journey is played out in four or five acts. The show generally begins with the Teaser containing an inciting incident, such as finding a dead body. During Act One, the first clue is found and by the end of the act turns into a cliff hanger, such as the clue seemingly pointing to the murderer, but in Act Two we are confronted by a twist of the cliff hanger from Act 1, for example the murder suspect is found dead. In Act Three the real villain’s identity is discovered and Act Four centers on the hero’s race to catch the baddie before reaching his/her big evil goal, such as blowing up Los Angeles (R. Port, personal communication, March 18, 2010).

The mechanism for propelling the story forward and progressing from act to act are *plot points* which present an obstacle to be overcome or discovery of important information that sends the hero in a different direction. Webber (2002) uses the
metaphor of falling rocks to illustrate the primary function of plot points – to force our hero to react. These twists in the story are what keep us as viewers on the edge of our seats and are in fact critical for audience engagement. Plot points are therefore the mechanisms for driving the story.

Since NUMB3RS uses the academic subject of mathematics as a key component of its story, it is a natural candidate for informing the development of a model expanding the Entertainment-Education methodology into the realm of academic learning. I posit that for an ABEE product to find a place in U.S. entertainment market, it is more likely to be successful if constructed in the same vein as network television shows such as NUMB3RS rather than shows like Voyage of the Mimi I described earlier, which has much lower production value and lacked the narrative structure commonly found on network television. For this reason, the former program will be the focus of this analysis to understand how academic subjects can be used to drive a narrative.

**Materials and Methods**

I began the process of data collection in order to analyze NUMB3RS in December 2009 by watching the first five seasons of the show available on DVD as well as the sixth season’s shows that had aired and were available on iTunes as of January 12, 2010, all totaling 114 episodes. In this preliminary analysis, I summarized the activity in each scene, noting (1) plot points, (2) math concepts mentioned or elucidated, and (3) visual representations of the math concepts. After watching the pilot on the first DVD, the use of metaphor to make the abstract and advanced math concepts used in the show more concrete emerged as an important mechanism of the “language” of the show. Therefore,
I added metaphor/analogy as the forth category in my preliminary analysis. I then tallied the number of plot points that were rooted in math (see Figure 3-1 for an example scene from the show’s script) in each episode, which ranged from zero to four (Figure 3-2). Wanting to find the episodes with the most robust use of math-as-story-driver, I chose for my full analysis the episodes having three or more math-driven plot points (MDPP), narrowing down the list to 13 (Table 3-1).

Next, I contacted the Writer’s Office of NUMB3RS to request the final production scripts for the 13 episodes culled from my preliminary analysis. It took a couple of weeks for my request to receive final approval, having to proceed from the Writer’s Office all the way to the CBS Legal Department, before I was given the PDF files for each of the requested scripts. Unfortunately, several of the scripts provided were not the final shooting versions, but were up to the 6th revised draft and possibly one or two drafts away from the final shooting script. Since the series wrapped production shortly after I received the scripts in mid-January 2010, I was not able to obtain the final versions. However, I found no substantive differences between the draft scripts and the aired episodes that would confound this analysis.
14 INT. FBI -- WAR ROOM -- NIGHT

Don, Megan enter, find David.

DAVID
What'd the Consulate General say?

MEGAN
That he didn't know her very well.

DAVID
[joking]
Well, he's either telling the truth
or the Chinese have a pretty
liberal hiring policy...

DON
What's up?

DAVID
Credit card had a bunch of charges
to night clubs, lingerie shops
and the occasional "adult" store.

MEGAN
Not exactly the image her neighbors
painted...

DON
Run her with LAPD Vice. Narc too.
See what else she was hiding.

MEGAN
We still don't know if this girl
was even murdered.

Charlie enters --

CHARLIE
Actually, we do. As promised, I
have your answer about whether this
was an accident.

DON
Charlie, what'd you skip classes?

(Continued)
Charlie
Lunch... and dinner... Do you guys have a sandwich or something?

Don
We'll send out. What do you got?

Charlie starts to hook up his laptop.

Charlie
Well, at first I was using a steady motion algorithm to try to determine the victim's movement at impact. But my results were inconclusive.

David
But you persevered.

Charlie walks and imitates the motion he describes.

Charlie
I imagined walking... the motion of her feet... Then it became obvious, curtate cycloid.

Megan
Curtate cycloid, of course.

Charlie
Think of someone's stride like the moon orbiting around the Earth...

Audience Vision --
We see an animated moon...

Charlie (V.O.) (Cont'd)
As the moon moves around the Earth and the Earth moves around the sun, the moon traces out a curtate cycloid curve in space.

The moon spins and circles the Earth...

Charlie (V.O.) (Cont'd)
When you walk it's really a series of little circles rotating inside a larger circle.

An animated heel swings on an arc past the knee....

(Continued)
CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
The heel orbiting backward, then for ward past the knee is a small circle within the larger circle of walking...

RESUME SCENE

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
From there, I could probabilistically determine the lag motion of your victim at the point of impact.

MEGAN
And this helps us how?

CHARLIE
The marks on her legs that the vehicle’s lights made, they’re high.

DON
High?

CHARLIE
The bumper of the vehicle was rising on impact.

DON
So, the car was accelerating.

MEGAN
Which means this was no accident.

END OF ACT ONE
Figure 3-2
Episodes with Math Driven Plot Points (MDPPs).
Table 3-1  
*Episodes Selected for Analysis.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Episode Name</th>
<th>Season</th>
<th>Consecutive # and Episode</th>
<th>Writer</th>
<th>Math Driven Plot Points (MDPPs)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guns and Roses</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>220/Ep. 33</td>
<td>Robert Port</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rampage</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>221/Ep. 34</td>
<td>Ken Sanzel</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Mole</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>305/Ep. 42</td>
<td>Robert Port</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Hour</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>317/Ep. 54</td>
<td>Ken Sanzel</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Democracy</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>318/Ep. 55</td>
<td>Cheryl Heuton &amp; Nick Falacci</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trust Metric</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>401/Ep. 62</td>
<td>Ken Sanzel</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollywood Homicide</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>403/Ep. 64</td>
<td>Andrew Dettman</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Security</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>406/Ep. 67</td>
<td>Sean Crouch</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checkmate</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>414/Ep. 75</td>
<td>Robert Port</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conspiracy Theory</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>509/Ep. 88</td>
<td>Robert Port</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convergence</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>207/Ep. 20</td>
<td>Cheryl Heuton &amp; Nick Falacci</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandora's Box</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>319/Ep. 56</td>
<td>Andrew Black</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimatum</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>608/Ep. 110</td>
<td>Robert Port</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Proceeding with a full analysis, I read each script and produced a scene-by-scene summary noting uses of math concepts and analogy or metaphor, which led to the discovery of the show’s visual style convention. First, when a visual demonstration of a math concept is provided, they are noted in the scripts as “Audience Visions” (e.g. Figure 3-3). Second, when visually communicating Charlie’s sudden cognitive connection of math to the situation (often without an explanation given to the audience), where the audience is given a visual glimpse inside Charlie’s thought process, are called “Charlie Visions” (Figure 3-4). Since both are vehicles for visual communication and were generally paired with instances of analogy or metaphor, both were added as individual categories in my full analysis. To capture instances of using metaphors and analogies, I also created an umbrella category, “word picture” defined by Godawa (2009, p. 194) as “words that paint a picture in the mind rather than appeal to some kind of abstract reasoning.” These modifications to my coding structure allowed for the emergence of a pattern of interplay between the show’s visual and verbal communication of math concepts. Finally, using a modified visual notation system after Johnson (2006), I plotted the data by Scene and by Act to illustrate the linear relationship of the target qualities to the overall story structure (See Appendix A for all selected episodes).
OSWALD (CONT'D)
Wait, this is better. You know how they stack champagne glasses and fill them with champagne?

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION:

The classic pyramid of champagne glasses.

OSWALD (V.O.) (CONT'D)
You only pour the champagne into the top glass but it overflows into all the other glasses.

The champagne pours over the top and into the glasses below.

BACK TO SCENE

OSWALD (CONT'D)
Requires resources applied in only one location, but it spreads.

ALAN
(sotto voice)
Good God, another one.

CHARLIE
You mean the conspiracy starts from a single source but can spread.

Alan goes to the board with Jason Brasher's name.

ALAN
That's right, because the supervisors oversee the county budget. They approve everything. Including voting equipment the county boys.

DON
Brasher could make sure the county keeps buying rigged machines.

CHARLIE
And with LA County's huge population, rigged machines here could make the difference in a statewide election.

The four look at each other, realizing the implications.

DON
He's not just after a Supervisor's seat--

(continues)
AMITA
That's exactly my point.

Charlie looks at her.

CHARLIE
You think we should try to make
time for certain things?

Amita stands up.

AMITA
I think when it's right, the time
will be there.

CHARLIE
I hate it when you use logic.

AMITA
Sure you don't want some pie?

CHARLIE
No, I need to think. Somehow
Marshall's analysis, and this FBI
case, are tangled up in my head.

Amita nods, leaves. Charlie gets up, goes down to look the
boards filled with equations and notes. Sees the words "poly-
nuclear growth model" above a drawing of a pyramid-shape --

ENTER CHARLIE VISION

The pyramid shape becomes a pyramid-shaped asymptotic matrix
-- a huge complex structure of lines and points -- which
morphs into a -- tower structure, a cellular tower.

Overlay of images -- cell phones memos, hexagonal cell zones,
a signal path into space to a geosynchronous satellite --

24  EXP. FBI - DAY  24

Charlie intently talking to Don and Megan as the three walk.
Charlie pulls out his cell phone.

CHARLIE
Don, do you realize what's in here?

DON
Other than a lot of unanswered
voice mails, no.

(CONTINUED)
Results

My analysis of NUMB3RS seeks to understand how this entertainment product communicates a scientific concept and integrates it into the story structure. It is not intended to assess the quality or educative value of the series. Having not had formal training in screenwriting, it is possible that what I would consider to be a plot point in a story may differ from that of professional screenwriters. However, since my goal is ultimately to understand the show from a viewer’s point of view, and since a casual viewer would most likely lack such formal training, the absence of this skill should not be considered a liability in this analysis.

By reducing episodes to their elemental parts, a fascinating pattern of writing convention has emerged, primarily through the use of metaphor partnered with a visual demonstration. This convention was used almost exclusively to drive the story in a new direction as opposed to simply providing context for the story. In other words, rarely in these episodes was math used non-incidentally to the forward motion of the story. Furthermore, even though NUMB3RS has a specific style, my analysis shows this style is not formulaic across all episodes of the series. The same plot structure is not used across all episodes. Some episodes relied more heavily on (1) character development, (2) communicating math concepts and how they work (verses math functioning simply as context), or (3) utilizing math as a plot point. In other words, math as a story engine was used neither predictably nor consistently throughout the series.

The 13 selected scripts are as a group different from the rest of the series but do not differ from each other in terms of MDPPs. Interestingly, while the variance in the
number of MDPP is low within this group, the MDPP do not occur at comparable points in the story across this selection of episodes. This suggests that the episodes are not formulaic in the use of MDPP.

Discussion

The inventory of word pictures in Table 3-2 demonstrates the importance of metaphor in communicating abstract concepts to the audience of NUMB3RS. Academic curiosity could tempt us to analyze these metaphors and the context in which they reside for learning efficacy. How well do they teach math? To what degree do viewers of NUMB3RS grasp the higher math concepts presented in the show? However, since the show was not created with a pedagogical intent, such an analysis would be purely academic. Even so, this series demonstrates an important concept that may be foundational to an Academically-based Entertainment-Education model. NUMB3RS translates abstract concepts for a general audience through the language of metaphor. The key is “language,” the conduit through which ideas are transferred. Whereas math concepts can be made accessible to a non-math audience through metaphors and analogies, another subject might be poorly served by this approach. I suggest that a subject such as geography, which is steeped in a history of observation and description, i.e. a visual discipline, may be better served through a visual language or a narrative device featuring role modeling provided by Bandura’s social cognitive theory.

Regardless of the narrative device used, ABEE built on the foundation of my grounded theory approach will utilize plot points centered on concepts from the chosen academic field to be communicated.
Since MDPPs appear at different locations in the story in each of the selected NUMB3RS scripts, the use of math within the structure of the story can be considered independent of the traditional Hero’s Journey for this television series. The use of word pictures are the vector through which math is woven into the story of each episode.

Table 3-2
List of Math or Logic Concepts Paired with a Word Picture.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Episode Name</th>
<th>Concept</th>
<th>Word Picture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acoustic fingerprint</td>
<td>Sound waves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Doppler Effect</td>
<td>Bat's radar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Statistical matrix</td>
<td>Figure skater can statistically win even with deductions for mistakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DNA haplitypes</td>
<td>House blueprints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inequality bounding</td>
<td>Dogs chained in a yard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brownian Path</td>
<td>Pool table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-organizing criticality</td>
<td>India's change to set time by an observatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tesseract</td>
<td>Tesseract is not really a tesseract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Backtaing-Wisenfeld sand pile</td>
<td>Hourglass sand pile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kertate Cycloid</td>
<td>Moon orbiting earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Igenfaces</td>
<td>Color blindness test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Combinatorial optimization</td>
<td>Rubric's cube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploit</td>
<td>Luggage stickers from destinations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pooling equilibrium</td>
<td>Cake cutting algorithm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Logic maze</td>
<td>Labyrinth game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Episode Name</td>
<td>Concept</td>
<td>Word Picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Democracy</td>
<td>Metadata</td>
<td>Zip code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perpetuating aspect of nanotechnology</td>
<td>Overflow of champagne in a glass pyramid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voting on tampered voting machines</td>
<td>Building a model from instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trust Metric</td>
<td>Set covering deployment</td>
<td>Placement of lighthouses on coastline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trust metric</td>
<td>Fuzzy logic of describing an ice cube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eric Strauss' room</td>
<td>Finding a fugitive's &quot;dark space&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollywood Homicide</td>
<td>Refracted image; Archimedes' principle; Game theory risk and response;</td>
<td>Reassembling a shattered gumball machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game theory risk and response</td>
<td>Jackal threat to lioness and cub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Security</td>
<td>Application of path analysis</td>
<td>Rat in maze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value Shaded Reasoning</td>
<td>Figure ground image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CARD analysis</td>
<td>Growing tree with branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Morphological image cleaning algorithm</td>
<td>Paleontology dig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checkmate</td>
<td>Temporal link analysis</td>
<td>Cutting a diamond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supervised multiclass labeling</td>
<td>Cadaver dogs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Backwards induction</td>
<td>Rosetta stone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conspiracy Theory</td>
<td>Forensic video reconstruction</td>
<td>Emperor penguin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simpson's Paradox</td>
<td>Baseball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desorption electrospray ionization</td>
<td>Fireworks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3-2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Episode Name</th>
<th>Concept</th>
<th>Word Picture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Convergence</td>
<td>Data mining</td>
<td>Jigsaw puzzle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calendars</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Emergence Theory</td>
<td>Ant farm colony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Three-dimensional trilateration</td>
<td>Cell phone towers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deep current set theory</td>
<td>Ocean currents influencing weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandora's Box</td>
<td>Wavelet-based deconvolution algorithm</td>
<td>Photographer with cheap camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Strange Loop Theory</td>
<td>MC Essher's lithograph The Stairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimatum</td>
<td>Pursuit Evasion</td>
<td>Snake hunting fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game Theory</td>
<td>Two people decide how to split $100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Longitudinal socializing model</td>
<td>Hide and seek children's game</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The composition of word pictures appears in the selected episodes in one of three configurations: (1) a metaphor or analogy elucidated with a visual narrative (labeled as “Audience Vision” in the scripts); (2) a metaphor or analogy explained through a physical demonstration by the actor; or (3) a metaphor or analogy explicated through the natural dialog of the scene (See Appendix B).

**Word picture with a visual narrative – the “Audience Vision”**

In the first configuration, word pictures are presented to the audience with a visual narrative accompanied by the actor’s voice narrating what is seen and its metaphorical or analogous meaning. This treatment manifests itself as a visual cut-away from the show, yet is still tied to the scene. It is analogous to a map featuring a corner inset for a close-up view of a target area. Within the script, this cut-away is designated as
an “Audience Vision.” For example in the “Hollywood Homicide” episode (Dettmann, 2007), the FBI team has deduced that months before being murdered, a victim had been blackmailing a member of a Hollywood star’s entourage, however this puzzles Charlie. While it might seem plausible that the blackmail was the trigger for the murder, Charlie evokes Risk and Response Analysis of Game Theory to reframe the murder as an extreme reaction to the blackmail. Charlie explains by introducing the word picture of a lioness and her cubs being circled by a hungry jackal. The scene inside the FBI office then cuts away to the visuals of the Audience Vision. We see in live action a jackal circling a pride at a distance yet in plain view of the lioness. She keeps an eye on the intruder but remains reclining with her cubs in the grass. As the visual narrative runs, we hear Charlie narrating the scene. He explains that as long as the jackal stays an acceptable distance from the cubs, the mother lion tolerates the jackal’s presence. Next we see the jackal moving closer to the cubs as Charlie explains that when the jackal moves to a physical distance that crosses the lioness’ comfort zone, the animal’s presence becomes an unacceptable threat. We see the lion swiftly kill the jackal as Charlie continues, “In turn, the lion’s response becomes lethal” (Dettmann, 2007, pp. 45, Scene 39). The visual narrative ends and we return to the FBI office. Now on camera, Charlie posits the blackmail involving knowledge of the sale of DVDs of soon-to-be-released movies could be considered a low risk act. Something else must have triggered the murder. In other words, there is more to the story; this word picture serves as a plot point to send the story in a new direction.
**Word picture presented through a physical demonstration**

In a second category, the writers of *NUMB3RS* present word pictures via a physical activity of one of the actors. In “Pandora’s Box” (Black, 2007, pp. 21, Scene 13), when a Park Ranger is found dead from a gunshot on the ridge of the Angeles Crest Forest near the wreckage of a downed corporate jet, the FBI is called in to investigate. Charlie uses the debris field to mathematically predict the location of the Flight Management Computer. However, when his predictive model produces consistently short distance calculations, yet with the correct trajectory, Charlie realizes the plane had to have been heavier than reported on the flight manifest. He demonstrates his discovery to the team by grabbing a muffin and throwing it to the ground where it explodes on impact. The resulting crumb debris field provides the visual aid. He explains if the muffin had contained heavier objects such as nuts, the debris field would have had a different pattern. Nuts are heavier and with more mass would have traveled farther. Charlie reveals that the debris field from the plane is more spread out than his calculations predict it should be. There had to have been something else on aboard, something that someone chose not to reveal. Now we have a new twist in the plot. What was on the plane and where is it now?

**Word picture presented through natural dialogue**

Word pictures were also occasionally present in the natural dialog between characters. In “Convergence” (Heuton & Falacci, 2005a, pp. 19-20, Scene 11), FBI Agents David Sinclair and Colby Granger arrive at Charlie’s office to find the math professor memorized by the workers of an ant farm moving through the maze of
passages sandwiched between two sheets of glass he holds in his hands. Charlie states, “Emergent Theory. The whole is greater than the sum of its parts. Individually, ants have limited capabilities, but the colony can be viewed as a single, complex organism. But you aren’t here to talk about ants, are you?”

**ABEE model summary**

There is the danger that development of an Academically-based Entertainment-Education model based on a single exemplar may result in a model with limited applicability, however it does present a strong base upon which to grow the model. Working from a unique and successful television series provided two key components necessary for an ABEE model that could be successful in the U.S. entertainment market. Those components are (1) academic concepts seamlessly integrated into the story, and (2) what Hollywood calls “high concept,” a story premise that can be easily described in a sentence or two. As with E-E in general, ABEE products cannot lose sight of the importance of “entertainment value”, and as they say in Hollywood, story is king. Therefore, while keeping “story” at the forefront, the ABEE model can be summarized as having the following characteristics:

1. **Speaks in the language of the medium through role modeling and translates academic concepts through word pictures.** As visual mediums, film and television provide environments to primarily “show” as opposed to “tell.” A common instruction for screenwriters is “Don’t tell me. Show me.” Regardless of the medium, fictional narratives create a “lived experience” when well crafted stories engage the audiences’ emotions and imagination. Generally, when the medium is used simply as a delivery
conduit for a message, the format becomes dominated by instruction or lecture, which is commonly found in distance education and instructional programming on PBS, for example. By utilizing the language of the medium through fictional narratives and facilitated by word pictures, ABEE creates a lived experience to which audiences can identify.

2. The plot points that drive the story are themselves driven by academic concepts. Utilizing the context of film and television story structure ensures that academic concepts do not languish as context but instead become the story. By using academic concepts at story loci responsible for challenging the viewer and unfolding the story, the story not only unfolds with the academic concept but also because of the academic concept.

3. Plot points serve to scaffold audiences to reach a narrative and educative conclusion. In the same way that plot points serve to send the narrative story into a new direction, usually by presenting an obstacle the hero has to overcome in order to reach his/her goal, ABEE uses plot points to challenge what the viewer knows about the target academic subject. In Vygotskian terms, the ABEE plot point challenges the viewer. The subsequent path the story takes after each plot point provides the support to scaffold the viewer to obtain the target academic concept the ABEE product is designed to teach.

Conclusion

Since television shares basic writing convention with cinema, both being rooted in Aristotelian poetics, it would follow that use of academic concepts at plot points to drive the story would be applicable across either of these traditional and linear media
environments. Due to the high cost of producing traditional media (e.g. film or television), opportunities to implement and test the ABEE model are limited. However, scholars can look to non-traditional media, especially Internet-based environments, which can be produced and consumed with significantly less monetary investment than traditional media and since my primary focus is in developing E-E interventions to teach geography concepts, I would be remiss in not addressing the relatively new and non-linear tool for geographic exploration that is free to anyone with access to the Internet, such as Google Earth (GE). GE has indeed emerged as a popular tool for both the expert and the novice to explore the world. Yet since GE is primarily a visual environment, with the primary “text” being satellite imagery and aerial photography at various scales stitched together into a mosaic providing a visual representation of the earth’s surface, I would argue that this visual medium requires visual literacy skills and a critical eye to utilize in a deeper, educative manner. This is due not only to the way the global imagery is constructed, but also to its subject. While a novice may view GE and easily recognize the objects represented, e.g. mountains, urban landscapes, rivers, etc, or what could be characterized as the individual pieces of a puzzle, a novice may not be able to understand how those pieces are related as a greater whole. Such is the domain of geography, which is concerned with the patterns and processes forming and occurring on the surface of the earth. While millions of people have viewed imagery in GE both in formal educational environments (as a classroom activity or scholarly research tool) as well as non-formal environments (home or other recreational use), we do not yet have scholarly research on the differences between novices’ and experts’ use or the degree to
which causal experiences with GE evoke learning. Such gaps in the literature do not, however, preclude an exploration of new approaches to the educational use of GE.

In the next chapter I explore the virtual world of GE as a learning environment and the implicit need of expert intervention in order for a novice to acquire deeper knowledge in this non-formal environment. The ABEE model developed through this chapter can be translated from the linear and textual environment of traditional media to the dynamic, interactive, and non-linear environment of new media. In applying ABEE to new media, I present an avenue for developing learning experiences that can be “driven” by a novice, yet embody the educative value provided by an expert.
CHAPTER IV
MANUSCRIPT #3:
ABEE AND NON-LINEAR MEDIA

Introduction

The development of non-linear entertainment venues, found in the genre of computer games and simulations, may provide a new direction for investigating the use of narrative in educational experiences. Previously, theories such as Social Cognitive Theory (Bandura, 1986; Pajares, 2009) have been used to explore the role of narrative in learning and applied within both formal and non-formal educational contexts (e.g. Dittmann, 2004; Fu, Chan, & Yip, 2009; Martin, 2004; Udornpim & Singhal, 1999), the latter has focused primarily on the linear media of film, television, and radio and subsequently producing the field of Entertainment-Education (Sabido, 2004).

Entertainment-Education (E-E) seeks to impact social problems by developing soap operas or other dramatic forms of entertainment as interventions designed to teach audiences about a targeted health education message by modeling positive and negative behavior through the protagonist and antagonist characters (see Singhal, Cody, et al., 2004b for intervention examples and a history of the field). Extension of the E-E methodology to teach academic concepts (as opposed to focusing on behavioral outcomes) has been achieved through the development of Academically-based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) model (Simms, 2010b), which utilizes the “language” of the medium to communicate academic concepts by weaving them into the fabric of
the story at critical points in the plot. Through ABEE, academic concepts function as
more than context for the story. Academic concepts are used to drive the story through
the screenwriting convention of *plot points* defined as the junctures in filmic narratives
where the story twists and sends the protagonist along a different path as he/she
continues towards his/her goal.

However, with advances in technology making interactive and nonlinear media
widely available through the Internet in recent years, “new media” is changing the
landscape of entertainment in the United States, first seen in the decline of newspaper
subscriptions and television/radio news broadcast ratings as consumers shift to the
Internet delivery vehicle (O’Leary, 2009). Irrespective of form, new media is quickly
becoming a dominate player on the communication stage and becoming a tool for
education as well. Therefore, in this article, I explore the research question “How can the
Academically-based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) model be used in the non-linear
environment found in new media?” by utilizing Google Earth as my medium. I begin by
elucidating each of the components contributing to this research environment including
the ABEE model, the language of film, and the language of Google Earth. Next, I
present a scenario of how the ABEE model may manifest in the non-linear environment
of GE by translating the traditional media-informed components of the model to their
nonlinear media counterparts. Lastly, I conclude with implications of this research and
possible future research directions. To begin this discussion, I review the recent changes
in the landscape of geography education.
Geography education in the new millennium

During this decade, geography education has experienced a kind of technology renaissance. Prior to the year 2000, geographers trained in the use of complicated geographic information systems (GIS) and global positioning systems (GPS) were needed to analyze and interpret geospatial data to parse patterns and interpret processes appearing or impacting the landscape. From city planners to wildlife ecologists, geospatial experts were a specialized group of professionals who “read” the landscape using geospatial techniques, not unlike a radiologist reading and interpreting an X-ray or ultrasound. However with the release of the virtual globe Google Earth (GE) in 2005 and the subsequent release of open-source GIS products, novice or citizen geographers sometimes referred to as “neo-geographers” (Turner, 2006) now have access to the same tools that were once too expensive for all but professionals and corporations. GE has emerged as a geospatial powerhouse in terms of popularity due to its ease of use and global coverage of imagery. As of 2008, the software application had been downloaded 350 million times (Taylor, 2008) and geography educators around the world have incorporated the technology into curricula (e.g. Google Earth Lessons, 2009; Kluge, Patrick, & Fermann, 2007; Patterson, 2007).

New media

While new media, such as GE, distinguishes itself from traditional media in many ways (Wardrip-Fruin & Montfort, 2003), I am primarily focused on its interactivity and non-linearity for this discussion. GE (Figure 4-1) provides interactive and non-linear experiences by virtue of the user interface. Users are able to navigate
around the mosaic of images forming the globe, zoom in or out, manipulate the layers of data that can be viewed, and create new layers of content. Google Earth not only provides a “stage” comparable to film and television upon which to develop ABEE products, but it also serves as an excellent medium through which to study and teach geography (e.g. Patterson, 2007; Schultz, Kerski, & Patterson, 2008).

Because of new media’s nonlinear and interactive nature (Moulthrop, 1991) it may communicate in a different language from traditional linear media (Ryan, 2004). First, the interactive experience creates a narrative expressed in a way that partially transitions authorship away from the creator and into the hands of the viewer. In other words, the viewer does not idly consume new media; he or she interacts with it and this interaction, according to reader-response critics (Benton, 1996, p. 72), constructs meaning. Thus, new media transforms the entertainment consumer into a user who makes choices which drive the experience. Second, the global imagery produced by and provided through Google Earth constructs a visual narrative possessing power and voice (Simms & Carpenter, 2010) since the mosaic image is constructed of smaller images which vary in resolution and other characteristics. While scholars have heralded Google Earth as a tool for science, education, and “the masses” (A. Beck, 2006; Lisle, 2006; Patterson, 2007), the imagery Google Earth constructs has not been analyzed using visual methodologies such as approaches taken by Rose (2001) and others who treat objects within images as text. Whereas a content analysis of Google Earth would be a direction for future research, it may not be a suitable approach for this discussion. Instead, I am interested in approaching the dynamism of Google Earth, which is more
Figure 4-1
Google Earth Interface.
closely related to film than to still photography.

**Purpose and Research Question**

In this article, I explore the language of film and compare it to the language of Google Earth. This exploration and comparison will lead to a discussion of how narrative functions within and through Google Earth. For the purpose of this discussion, I am referring to “narrative” as a tool for communication as opposed to a form of language. In this context, film can be characterized as communicating through storytelling (dialogue-dependent) narrative while Google Earth communicates through visual narrative. Next, I discuss how plot points, the driving mechanism of Academically-based Entertainment-Education model (ABEE), can be adapted to work within the Google Earth environment to develop novice-driven learning experiences facilitated by a non-linear environment. This approach is guided by the following questions: How might the narrative and linear mechanics of plot points (the filmic narrative convention for driving the story or plot) manifest in a non-linear environment? How might the non-linear version of plot points be used to direct a learning experience under the user’s navigational control? How can this model be used to develop educational experiences in non-linear media?

**Background**

**Language of film**

Although narrative manifests in varying ways in each of traditional media formats, for this discussion I treat “narrative” in terms of film. Specifically, I utilize David Bordwell and Kristin Thompson’s (2008) conceptualization of filmic narrative to
guide the following discussion because of the similarities Google Earth possesses to cinema, which will also be discussed in turn. According to Bordwell & Thompson (2008) (referred to as “B&T” from here on), narrative structure in film (Table 4-1) is composed of story and plot, which have compositional elements of space, time, and

Table 4-1
Comparison of Characteristics of Film, New Media, and Google Earth.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Film</th>
<th>New Media</th>
<th>Google Earth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cinematographic qualities</td>
<td>Interactive</td>
<td>Aleph characteristic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mise en scene</td>
<td>Internet-based</td>
<td>Interactivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narration</td>
<td>Labyrinth</td>
<td>Internet-Based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space</td>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>Spectacle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectacle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Virtuality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Story and plot</td>
<td></td>
<td>Virtuosity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td></td>
<td>Visually-dependent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

narration. The story is composed of narrative events, while the plot “describe[s] everything visibly and audibly present in the film” and includes the story (Bordwell & Thompson, 2008, p. 76). In other words, plot may be considered the explicit experience while story captures the implicit events not seen on screen, e.g. events occurring in a gap of time over which the film jumps in presentation or a character’s backstory. B&T divide narrative into three aspects: causality, time, and space (pp. 77-80). Characters are generally the agents “triggering and reacting to events” and these “actions and reactions contribute strongly to our engagement with the film” (p. 78). These authors frame
audiences as active consumers of narrative content. B&T point out “…in constructing the film’s story out of its plot, the viewer is engaged in trying to put events in chronological order and to assign them some duration and frequency” (p. 80). B&T further describe time as present in narrative as a mechanism to order events, e.g. mentally rearrange film narratives that utilize flashbacks or flash-forwards, and as a mechanism of the film experience, e.g. the time span of filmic events is compressed or expanded to fit in the film’s running time. For example, most feature-length Hollywood films run 90-120 minutes, yet the stories they tell can cover events spanning a couple of days to a lifetime of its characters. Next, B&T refer to space as the narrative’s locations as well as the screen space utilized in each scene.

Mechanically, films may utilize two techniques for moving the story forward. First, narration serves as the cues provided by the plot to supply or withhold information to create suspense or expectations. It is “the plot’s way of distributing story information in order to achieve specific effects. Narration is the moment-by-moment process that guides us in building the story out of the plot” (Bordwell & Thompson, 2008, p. 88) and can be accomplished by a character in the story or documentary-style unseen commentator. Second, the story is moved forward through scene progressions, the boundaries of which are the physical cut to a new location (p. 97).

Lastly, B&T describe a film in terms of its mise en scène showing an unplanned/uncontrolled characteristic. How the scene is framed including staging, lighting, costume, etc., which can be positively impacted by serendipity, for example when director John Ford took advantage of the added visual spectacle provided by an
approaching thunderstorm in the background of a scene in She Wore a Yellow Ribbon (p. 112). Due to cultural differences in defining realism, Bordwell & Thompson caution against using this term, choosing instead to focus on the functions of mise-en-scene in the films because in one context mise-en-scene may be used to create an impression of realism while another may use it for different effects. B&T list effects of comic exaggeration, supernatural terror, or beauty, for example, may be culturally defined or informed. As these authors suggest, analysis of mise-en-scene’s function should be in relation to the total film, i.e. how mise-en-scene is motivated, developed, or otherwise works in relation to other film techniques (Bordwell & Thompson, 2008, p. 113).

Finally, mise en scène also reflects the role editing plays in assembling the scenes into the final narrative. For example, “editing usually serves not only to control graphics and rhythm but also to construct film space….Editing permits the filmmaker to juxtapose any two points in space and thus imply some kind of relationship between them” (Bordwell & Thompson, 2008, p. 227). Mise-en-scene will be an important characteristic to consider in Google Earth which will be addressed in terms of composition of setting, props, lighting, and staging (movement and performance) to draw the viewer’s attention, to emphasize meaning, and to create emotion. This characteristic will be address later in this discussion.

Lastly B&T show how the language of film operates through cinematographic qualities. The filmmaker “controls not only what is filmed, but also how it is filmed. Cinematographic qualities involve three factors: (1) the photographic aspects of the shot, (2) the framing of the shot, and (3) the duration of the shot” (Bordwell & Thompson,
The combination of narration, cinematography, and *mise en scène* compose the language of film.

**Spectacle and baroque**

In film, these elemental parts function together to produce the entertainment product that Angela Ndalianis (2004) ties to the “spectacle” of the baroque period of Western art. During the baroque period, artists produced works that “evoke[d] emotional states by appealing to the senses, often in dramatic ways…[often using the qualities of] grandeur, sensuous richness, drama, vitality, movement, tension, emotional exuberance, and a tendency to blur distinctions between the various arts” (Pioch, 2002). Dutch painter Jan Vermeer’s work *The Geographer* (currently held at the Städel Museum in Frankfurt am Main, Germany) provides an example of the baroque style (Figure 4-2). Notice the richness of materials represented in his painting such as the opulence of the tapestry draping the desk. Vermeer depicts a man gazing out of a window viewing the three dimensional world yet working with a two dimensional presentation (a map). Vermeer’s use of “conspicuous exclusion”, whereby the glaring absence creates the presence of the omitted (Berger 1972, p. 244), invites the viewer to consider the idyllic as a parody. Vermeer’s light illuminates the repositories of knowledge in *The Geographer*: the maps lying on the work surface and the floor, the Geographer in thought, the globe on the cabinet (Bird 1999, p. 120). There is a shadow cast on the back wall that can logically be inferred as originating from the configuration of the globe and cabinet, also mimics the pose of the Geographer. Bird (1999, p. 120) points to this shadow as a representation of a “haunt[ing] by an(other), a different geometry that
Figure 4-2
*Vermeer’s The Geographer (Wikipedia Commons, 2005).*
decenters, where vision is frustrated and something darker, something ‘unconscious’,
enters in”. Bird (1999) describes Vermeer as “depicting ‘thought’ itself”:

Vermeer was painting as the discourses of science, philosophy and medicine and
their respective apparati were reformulating the concept of the subject, and the
mind/body dualism was shifting in favour of the embodied subject and an altered
conception of an active, interior consciousness production – not merely reflecting
– external reality. Leibniz, following Spinoza, pictures the mind as analogous to
a curtain, its gently oscillating folds representing ‘innate knowledge’. The
‘monadic’ subject’s privacy and interiority constantly breaks against the
materiality and chaos of the physical world (Bird, 1999, p. 119).

Bird’s use of the emotion-imbued term “haunting,” evokes a sense of drama in this
painting which characterizes the baroque style of the 17th century.

**Language of Google Earth**

Modern scholars have used the baroque style as a lens to analyze modern media.
For example, Angela Ndalianis argues “mainstream cinema and other entertainment
media are imbued with a new-baroque poetics” (Ndalianis, 2004, p. 5), framing cinema
as possessing the same “aesthetics of astonishment” (she credits Tom Gunning with the
term) as its static ancestor, whereby both demonstrate “a baroque concern with
exhibitionism, virtuosity, spectacle, and active audience engagement” (Ndalianis, 2004,
p. 181). The “baroque concern” is further inculcated through contemporary effects,
which share “the tradition Gunning has characterized (via Sergei Eisenstein) as the
‘cinema of attractions’ (Ndalianis, 2004, p. 182), yet is expressed in “technologically
and culturally different ways.” (Ndalianis, 2004, p. 5). The combination of visual, auditory, and text is expressed in Google Earth in a way made possible only through digital media and parallels neo-baroque’s “means of using the image in ways that may transport users to a new period of technological reenlightenment” (Ndalianis, 2004, p. 6). In the case of Google Earth, this new technology provides the ability to view every part of the Earth’s surface at one time, and in levels of detail never before possible, with the ability for users to overlay data or annotations. These abilities work together to create the narrative space in Google Earth.

With technology at the root of the neo-baroque characterization, Ndalianis suggest how narrative is being changed, and extended, by this new era stating:

Entertainment forms such as computer games, comic books, theme parks, and television shows have become complexly interwoven, reflecting the interests of multinational conglomerates that have investments in numerous media companies. One media form serially extends its own narrative spaces and spectacles and those of other media as well. Narrative spaces weave and extend into and from one another, so much so that, at times, it is difficult to discuss one form of popular culture without referring to another. In turn, this phenomenon has given rise to theoretical catchphrases that are believed to be specific to our era—an era of the simulacra and the fragmentation of ‘meaning’ (p. 33).

I argue this cross-reference of narrative forms is necessary for Google Earth to be utilized in the manner which I am proposing with ABEE. In fact, Google Earth presents Ndalianis’ “three most familiar metaphors that conjure images of the new experience of
narrativity…navigation, the labyrinth, and the Web…” (Ndalianis, 2004, p. 122).

Google Earth is dependent on the Web; while the software application itself resides on the user’s computer, the imagery and most content layers are streamed to the user over the Internet. As an interactive medium, Google Earth users control the navigation of the visual scene, zooming in and out, “flying” here and there, and manipulating the layers of visual images (data) to create his or her desired experience and meaning. But the characteristic of Google Earth that appears to be the most captivating for casual users is the seemingly endless possibilities for exploration of the global imagery. Although organized into a logical sequence that forms a three-dimensional mosaic, the experience of interacting with Google Earth creates a labyrinth by virtue of the user’s ability to zoom in or out and navigate in all cardinal directions. In exploring Google Earth myself and in observing others, both adult and child alike, it is not uncommon for users of Google Earth to become disoriented when viewing unfamiliar locations. Becoming engrossed in exploration, I have gotten lost, unsure what part of the world I ended up in. It takes zooming out to a broader perspective to reorient myself. It is in this ability to change one’s position in altitude in addition to latitude and longitude which creates an implicit three-dimensional maze. As one navigates in the X, Y, and Z planes of three-dimensional space in GE, greater or lesser detailed imagery is presented to the user, contributing to the spectacle of GE. The spectacle of GE maps directly to Ndalianis’ point about cinema having the ability to lure audiences “into the characters, objects, and

---

2 Google Earth does allow imagery to be cached on the user’s computer to work in “off-line mode”, but the point remains that updates to the content, not to mention the original initiation of the application, requires Internet connectivity.
environments that are contained within the ‘box’ of the computer or television screen: We emotionally, empathically, and perceptually enter the microcosmic worlds of virtual reality through our direct interaction with them” (Ndalianis, 2004, p. 151). Instead of a fascination with characters, Google Earth users may be experiencing a fascination with places and the things found there. I argue that these places and things are the building blocks needed to construct a narrative and create an ABEE experience teaching geography concepts through the “language” of the visually-dominant new media of GE.

Primarily, GE possesses the characteristic of what Mirzoeff (1999) calls “virtuality”, whereby “what is not real, but rather realistic, appears as real” (Simms & Carpenter, 2010, p. 135). If, as Ndalianis contends, virtuosity is an integral feature of neo-baroque, then Simms and Carpenter (2010) elucidate the neo-baroque qualities of GE. They argue that the image of the earth presented by GE is not a single image but instead is a composite of smaller images assembled into a large mosaic. These smaller images vary in age, spatial resolution, and visual quality. When one zooms into a location, it is not uncommon to find a clear boundary between images with one taken in a different season from its neighbor or possessing a higher or lower visual resolution. Such variation occurs throughout GE and is part of its nature. In order to facilitate dynamic zoom ability of GE, the user is not actually zooming into the same image. Instead, he/she is visually experiencing something similar to the illusion of animation that a flipbook provides. When one “flies” from outer space down to one’s backyard, GE delivers multiple images beginning from the grand view provided by a satellite image to subsequently larger resolution images (the larger the spatial resolution, the less real
estate is in view) and ending with aerial photography as opposed to magnifying a picture
to obtain finer details. GE is more like viewing a sequence of individual pictures of a
person where we see the full length of their pose, to a medium shot picture (composed of
their head and torso), to a head shot picture (from the shoulders up), to a close-up picture
(face), to an extreme close-up picture (just their eyes).

Moving beyond virtuosity and virtuality, GE shares another characteristic with
the neo-baroque. Ndalianis describes neo-baroque and baroque periods as using
technology to push the perceptual boundaries of audiences by:

…collapsing and testing the boundaries that separate representation from reality
and confronting viewers with technological tours de force. In the virtuoso
construction of represented realities, audiences are invited to engage self
reflexively with the works’ technical and technological processes of construction.
Furthermore, the (neo-)baroque constructs spectacles that strategically make
ambiguous the boundaries that distinguish reality from illusion (Ndalianis, 2004,
p. 105).

Further contributing to the virtuality effect, GE creates the illusion of three-dimensional
landscapes through the use of a mathematical model of the earth’s surface undergirding
GE’s three-dimensional representation of the imagery. The three-dimensional effect of
the landscape, allowing a user to feel as if they are flying through the Grand Canyon or
diving underwater to navigate the Pacific ocean’s floor, is facilitated by overlaying
imagery onto a mathematical mesh like one lays strips of gluey paper over chicken wire
to make a paper maché piñata. The peaks and valleys of the model of the earth’s surface
push and stretch the imagery to emulate three-dimensional relief (Fig. 4.3). This type of representation and the ability to see any part of the world in a way that is impossible in the natural, directly maps to Ndalianis’s description of neo-baroque as complicating the “classical spatial relations through the suggestion of the collapse of the representational frame” and engaging the audience in a new spatial relationship with the viewed object since “rather than providing a statically ordered perspectival arrangement, the center continually shifts, the result being the articulation of complex spatial conditions” (Ndalianis, 2004, pp. 152-153).

Whereas neo-baroque “instigates participatory spectatorial positions through dynamic compositional arrangements,” GE instigates participation through a dynamic user interface where the audience “drives” their own experience. In this way, navigation is truly in the hands of the GE user. Consider the parallel with Ndalianis’ (2004) point:

With borders continually being rewritten, (neo-)baroque vision provides sensorial models of perception that suggest representational worlds that lose the sense of one center. Rather, the center is now to be found in the position of the spectator. Given that (neo-) baroque spectacle provides polycentricity and multiple shifting centers, the spectator, in a sense, is the only element in the image/viewer scenario that remains centered and stable. The audience’s perception of an active engagement with the image orders the illusion” (pp. 152-153).
Figure 4-3
Enhanced Imagery from Google Earth. Images of Dallas, Texas (top) and Aspen, Colorado (bottom), populated with three-dimensional models acquired on November 24, 2010 demonstrate how Google Earth enhances satellite imagery and aerial photography through simulated topography and models of buildings.
In this statement, Ndalianis’ concept crystallizes the connection between GE and neo-baroque and therefore how it functions as an entertainment medium like film and television. Since GE’s representation of the world is a constructed image not unlike the constructed cinematic image, GE functions as a narrative medium similar to film and television. However, the narrative base of GE differs from film and television. Even though film and television are visual media, they are driven by text-based narrative made explicit through spoken dialogue. If one mutes a film or television program, the full narrative’s detail and story nuance, may not be conveyed. While scholars such as Mirzoeff (1999, p. 10) would disagree with my statement, I point to the silent films of cinema’s earliest days as support. In the absence of sound, silent films utilized text (written words) to aid the audience in understanding the story. In this respect, the narrative modality of GE may communicate more similarly to that of silent films, but instead of featuring actors and sets, GE presents an experience where landscape features serve as the actors and as the stage upon which three-dimensional buildings and annotated “placemarks”³ (Fig. 4.4) are placed. However, if we treat GE as a space in which a narrative can reside, we need to elucidate the mechanism through which GE communicates.

³ Placemarks are visual notation icons (in the form of a pushpin) used to mark a location (Google Inc., 2009).
Figure 4-4

Placemarks in Google Earth.

A placemark with a tab icon, unexpanded to hide text.

A placemark with a pushpin icon, expanded to reveal text.
Non-linear narrative

Despite the differences which I have thus far pointed to between traditional media and new media, the characteristic of narrative remains the same. Ryan (2004) defines narrative text as:

…one that brings a world to the mind (setting) and populates it with intelligent agents (characters). These agents participate in actions and happenings (events, plot) which cause global changes in connected states and events that captures a segment in the history of a world and of its members (p. 337).

Differences between the two media genres can be found in the way they each embody narrative. New media presents experiences that traditional media cannot, primarily through interactivity. For example, websites provide interactivity by allowing the user to click on text, commonly called hypertext (Deemer, 1994; World Wide Web Consortium, n.d.), imbued with the ability to navigate to a new page or other content. As Ryan describes:

…hypertexts are networks of textual fragments, called “lexia” or “textrons,” connected by links. Readers move through the text by clicking on buttons, and, since most fragments contain many buttons, readers have a choice of many different itineraries. The significance of this multiplicity has been an object of endless theorizing. Of special relevance to our topic is the claim that, since every reading follows a different path, hypertext is capable of endless self-regeneration. I call this interpretation the Alephic conception of hyper text, by analogy with ‘The Aleph,’ the short story by Jorge Luis Borges in which the scrutiny of a
cabalistic symbol enables the experience to contemplate the whole of history and of reality, down to its most minute details. The Aleph is a small, bound object that expands into an infinity of spectacles, and the experience could therefore devote a lifetime to its contemplation. Similarly, hypertext has been conceived as a matrix that expands into a multitude of texts, as readers unravel new strings of signs from its finite database of discrete lexia (Ryan, 2004, p. 340).

Ryan’s alephic conception applies to virtual globes like GE. Because of the ability to click on a location and zoom into a closer view, every pixel in GE could be read as a hypertext link and as such could “[become] a machine for the production of stories, just as the grammar of a language is a machine for the production of sentences” (Ryan, 2004, p. 340). In this discussion, however, I am not concerned with the implicit narrative that each image possesses or the narrative created by the juxtaposition of imagery to form the GE mosaic (see Simms & Carpenter (2010) for a treatment of GE imagery in terms of voice and power). Instead, my interest here is in exploration of GE as a stage upon which narrative is performed. In order to engage in such a treatment of GE, I present the following section to consider the characteristics of the stage itself and the ways in which it influences the performance of the narrative.

**The dual nature of Google Earth**

The co-dependent characteristics of visuality and nonlinearity give GE its unique structure when compared to traditional media. First, GE is a visually dominant medium

---

4 Google Earth may more appropriately be called hypermedia, defined as “hyper text which is not constrained to be text” (World Wide Web Consortium, n.d.) such as images or sound. However, to avoid confusion in this discussion, I will use hypertext to refer to all linked media, be it text or image.
that presents imagery of the earth and other celestial objects locked in time like
traditional photography. Because GE is devoid of text (aside from annotated placemarks
residing in a layer placed over the GE imagery), it presents a visual narrative that
communicates in a different language from dialogue-dominant film, television, or radio.
Second, GE possesses an interface that facilitates interactivity for the user that can be
used to present either a linear experience similar to film or television or a nonlinear
experience driven by the user. Such interactivity and ease of use position GE as a tool
for geographic exploration providing unprecedented access to global imagery that would
otherwise be financially prohibitive for most U.S. citizens. While there is a growing
body of evidence that GE can bring some aspects of science to the masses (e.g. A. Beck,
2006; Cuff, Hansen, & Kang, 2008; Goodchild, 2007) creating “citizen scientists”,
others are questioning the reliability of data generated by (presumably) untrained
volunteers (Flanagin & Metzger, 2008). While it may be true that GE provides an
intuitive user interface making exploration possible by those untrained in satellite image
interpretation, scholars have not explored the efficacy of GE as an unaided educational
tool, that is to say without the support of expert instruction. I suggest that just as one
cannot easily learn to read without guided instruction, it may also be the case that one
cannot learn to “read” the landscape simply by viewing images in GE. While no
published research is currently available on the teaching efficacy of GE, educators may
intuit that some level of expertise is required to make effective learning experiences.
Therefore, it may be necessary to augment GE with a tool that serves as a proxy for the
presence of an expert yet retain the quality of having the novice drive the experience.
This is the role that ABEE can fill. Providing a narrative layer on top of the GE experience to facilitate a deeper learning experiences than what is provided by aimless or undirected exploration. To a small degree, several organizations are already doing this by providing Google with thematic placemarks annotated with information about crises occurring at various world locations (currently found under the Global Awareness layer), e.g. United States Holocaust Memorial Museum (USHMM) placemarks with details of genocide in villages damaged or destroyed in Darfur, Sudan; Unicef placemarks detailing places struggling with water and sanitation issues; or World Wildlife Fund’s conservation projects placemarks. When viewed as a group, placemarks function as conventional narrative text placed on top of a visual environment. I propose there is a narrative space present in GE that is not being utilized. Earlier I described GE as a stage upon which a narrative can be acted through the placement of three-dimensional objects, as well as the landscape features themselves serving as actors. It is within in this conception of visual narrative, maintaining visual as such instead of treating the visual as text, which I am proposing ABEE will function.

**Translating ABEE for Non-Linear Environments**

Building upon Entertainment-Education’s behavioral change model and through analysis of episodes of the American television series NUMB3RS, Simms (2010b) defines one way that entertainment can potentially be used as a teaching vehicle. She explicates how the writers of the show used mathematic concepts as key components of the story’s plot to twist it in a new and surprising direction. These critical junctures of the story, termed “plot point”, create the surprise and suspense needed to engage
audiences. By using math concepts to facilitate this engagement, Simms recognizes the potential for any academic concept to be used in a similar way as well as the potential to exploit this writing technique in order to multiply the potential teaching efficacy of the linear medium. However in a non-linear environment, the story is not necessarily consumed by the audience in order from start to finish. Since the consumer is in navigational control of his/her interaction with the non-linear environment, the consumer (as opposed to the author) may construct a different story each time they initiate the entertainment product by deciding what part of the story to consume and when, similar to the Choose Your Own Adventure (CYOA) books (Chooseco, 2010; Wikipedia, 2010) where at critical parts of the story, the reader has the choice of selecting from among three or four possible choices. For example, the hero needs to find the missing piece of her map marking the location of her kidnapped best friend. She now faces a fork in the road. The reader can (a) take the left path and pay the mysterious guard a toll to cross the river (go to page 23), (b) take the right path and talk to the woodland creatures (go to page 36), or (c) double back and rummage the pockets of the nemesis she just defeated (go to page 42). Because the reader chooses which direction the story will go, he or she becomes a co-constructor with the author. In the non-linear environment of visually dominant new media such as GE, where text is minimal or non-existent, the concept of narrative and plot points require a measure of translation in order for the ABEE model to be applicable. In the case of GE, narrative may be expressed in the visual experience, similar to someone recounting their memory of walking through a new town and the sights and people they encountered. By using a tool in GE called “placemarks” (refer
back to Figure 4-4), an icon (such as a pushpin) functions as a hyperlink to bring up a window of text or images communicating something about that location, one can create an experience similar to the CYOA book. However, as a “go here, then go there” directive, this approach may be missing the surprise factor implicit in well crafted filmic narratives. One approach to this problem may reside in something originating from programmers of computer software and games who wanted to secretly leave their “mark” within their work.

**Easter eggs and virtual surprises**

More common in computer video games, “Easter eggs” are virtual surprises that are revealed when the user executes a set of actions in a video game or website, e.g. the Konami Code sequence of key strokes in the order of Up, Up, Down, Down, Left, Right, Left, Right, B, A, Enter key (N.A., 2010a). For instance, executing the Konami Code at the Marvel Comics website (http://marvel.com)\(^5\) will bring up a graphic of a squirrel ready for battle (Elliott, 2010). While there are other possible keystroke combinations or actions (N.A., 2010b; Nagy-Farkas, 1997; Wolf & Wolf, 2010c) that may uncover an Easter egg, not all instances of software or webpage surprises qualify according to Nagy-Farkas (1997, pp. 13-14). He requires a feature to (1) be undocumented in the software’s documentation, (2) be embedded by the original programmers, (3) be reproducible by more than one person, (4) not be malicious (i.e. not a computer virus or Trojan), and (5) be entertaining (that is to say, do more than enhance functionality or other practical

---

\(^5\) As websites are redesigned, Easter eggs may disappear. The Marvel Comics website is one example. I visited the site in November 2010 and found the Konami Code no longer launched this Easter egg on the landing page.
application). Today, the term is used in popular culture to refer to surprises and oddities appearing in film, television shows, and other entertainment products (Wolf & Wolf, 2010b). For example in the classic movie Arsenic and Old Lace, actor Cary Grant collects his thoughts while resting next to a grave headstone inscribed with the name Archie Leach, which is Cary Grant’s birth name (Wolf & Wolf, 2010a). Regardless of the context in which it is used, the overall effect and connotation of the term Easter egg is the same. The discovery of an Easter egg provides a surprise for the user/viewer and these surprises could provide a vehicle for infusing filmic narrative techniques into the visual environment of GE. Just as an element of surprise is used in filmic narratives through a writing convention called plot points, I propose that the concept of Easter eggs can be used in a similar way. Whereas plot points serve as a writing convention in film and television to spin the story in a new direction, often by presenting an obstacle that the protagonist must overcome in order to reach the goal, I believe Easter eggs can be utilized to catalyze exploration as well as shape educational learning experiences in a non-linear environment. Utilizing the concept of story narrative to design curriculum put forth by Parrish (Parrish, 2008), where the student sits in the role of the Hero, the curriculum becomes the Hero’s journey and plot points serve to challenge students, propelling them to deeper learning. Easter eggs can also serve as scaffolding tools for the learning experience, becoming the nonlinear counterpart to plot points used in traditional media. This dual role of Easter eggs, I believe, could be critical in facilitating a novice-driven learning experience.
So far, I have described the characteristics of GE and related them to traditional media to demonstrate the potential of this non-linear environment serving as a narrative space. I have described GE as a proverbial stage upon which a narrative can play with the items in the landscape of the imagery serving as the actors and the user’s exploration creating the narrative. I have also mapped Easter eggs as the non-linear counterpart to plot points in traditional (linear) narrative. These are the pieces needed to manifest my vision of ABEE in a non-linear environment, however I have not yet described how these pieces fit together to actually create a narrative. Just as a film must “run” in order for the story to be accessible, so too must a non-linear story be set into motion. I am reminded of Pinar’s (Pinar, 2004) theory that curriculum is not delivered but experienced as suggested by its ety mon currere, Greek for “to run the race;” the process of learning is just that, a process. This word imagery evokes teaching and learning as being in motion, however just as it is difficult to learn to ride a bicycle while stationary, it is difficult to describe narrative in a non-linear environment because of its inherent characteristic of being created as the user interacts with the medium (i.e. is in motion). Writers of a form of non-linear theater called hyperdrama experience a similar challenge and this concept can serve as an analogue for what I am trying to achieve with ABEE.

Hyperdrama

Charles Deemer (2008a) characterizes hyperdrama as a theater experience which “challenges the single vision of traditional theater” by exploding the narrative into multiple branches occurring simultaneously, inviting the audience to become spectators
mingling on stage as the actors perform. Deemer (2008b) illustrates with the analogy of a family gathering:

Imagine your last family Thanksgiving dinner. Imagine that all of the people there are actors, speaking lines written by a playwright (mostly). The play, then, spreads throughout the house (which is the "theater") with scenes happening in the kitchen as the meal is prepared, in the den as guys watch football, in a bedroom as a private family squabble develops -- all these scenes and others happen at once. This is hyperdrama. And the audience? Drop them into the house like invisible voyeurs, able to wander around and through the action at will (Deemer, 2008b).

GE can be viewed as a living stage that presents a visual narrative of places and processes occurring on Earth’s surface for the user who is “able to wander around and through the action at will” to use Deemer’s words. To the user with little experience viewing imagery taken from an overhead “bird’s eye view”, the spectacle of the medium may overpower. I equate this phenomena with the “hiding in plain sight” anecdotal similar to when it is difficult to find your car keys you know are somewhere in your cluttered room. In GE, it may be difficult for inexperienced users to interpret the imagery and deduce patterns and processes, thereby restricting the potential of building knowledge of geography concepts. This is where I believe ABEE can be used to enhance the educational experience as a mechanism to direct, intrigue, or otherwise prompt the novice or casual user of GE to “dig deeper.”
ABEE in Google Earth – Model in Motion

Figure 4-5 provides one possible view in a snapshot of the motion of the ABEE model in a non-linear environment. The hyperdrama concept provides the mechanism to drive the co-creation of the learning narrative with the user by allowing the user to navigate to any placemark at any time. Within the hyperdrama, plot points manifest in the form of a network of Easter eggs and placemarks enticing the user to continue along the hero’s path provided by Parrish’s learner-as-hero. In addition to helping the user understand the visual narrative of the imagery, the placemarks provide cognitive support for the user. By utilizing the language of the medium, in this case the visual communication of satellite imagery and user-controlled navigation, ABEE serves as a bridge between entertainment and pedagogy to leverage the best of both worlds.

Through a marriage of entertainment and education, ABEE provides an adaptable toolset for developing learning experiences deliverable through mass media not only supporting formal education, but potentially filling gaps formal education cannot. The manifestation of this model is demonstrated in the following scenario.
Expanded placemark

NASA provided content

Figure 4-5

*Example of ABEE Components.*
Unexpanded placemark

Easter egg revealed at the triggering eye altitude

Close up of expanded Easter

Figure 4-5 (continued)
**How Easter eggs might look in Google Earth**

Users mesmerized by the GE experience may have enjoyed exploring for the sake of exploration just as in exploring a real landscape, for example a beach or wilderness path. When something catches your eye, you might stop to investigate. If you discover something surprising, like a beautiful seashell or witness wildlife in their natural habitat, there may be a natural sense of satisfaction and motivation to keep exploring for the chance of finding another surprise. Within the virtual landscape of GE, educators might insert Easter eggs to construct such surprises and leverage them for educational intrigue. Consider the following scenario:

*Imagine while exploring GE, you find yourself navigating around the three-dimensional buildings of Las Vegas, Nevada. You “fly” around and between the extravagant structures and zoom out to around 4,000 feet for a great vantage point of the entire city and beyond. On the horizon to the east you notice something. It’s a shiny exclamation mark beckoning you to interact with it. Clicking on it transports you to 14,000 feet above a portion of the Grand Canyon in Arizona and a placemark window opens up. You read a cryptic message: “Wet feet twist into white dotted green.” You navigate along the river’s path at around 2,000 feet for the best view and notice many places along the shore where the bright white rocks and sand are dotted with trees. However, nothing remarkable has caught your eye to decipher the message. Returning to the placemark, you decide to try again, this time navigating just above the river’s surface (could that be the “wet feet” reference?). Twisting through the canyon, you see features you*
noticed previously, but just around another bend, a shiny arrow appears. It points to the shore populated with a stand of trees. The arrow is an Easter egg whose reveal was facilitated only because you were navigating at its triggering eye altitude. You turn into the direction of the pointer and follow the narrow feeder canyon to another placemark. Opening it you read the next clue: “Turn around and look up.” As you do, you are taken up to the elevation of a breathtaking vista and you notice the jagged, rocky landscape cut by the river. A host of placemarks appear along the Colorado River below. As you explore them, you read about the rock formations and their ages, the formative work of the river on the landscape, and the millions of years it took to provide you with this spectacular view. You also read about the river’s headwaters and where the river begins and ends outside of the Grand Canyon. After exploring a few placemarks, you notice another shiny exclamation mark on the horizon. Clicking on it sweeps you across the ocean and positions you facing the Nile Delta on the Mediterranean shore of Egypt. The placemark opens and you read: “Divide and conquer.” Navigating up the Nile River, you notice green agricultural activity undulating in an echoing pattern along the river’s banks creating a starkly contrasting division with the hues of the adjacent desert landscape. Along the route, you stop to investigate the fingers of agricultural activity penetrating the desert. The label for the city of Edfou gives interesting information provided by GE. Areas around Edfou seem to have a linear feature, a kind of backbone. Maybe it is an irrigation system allowing the desert to be “greened”. Could this
be the “divide and conquer” clue? You keep navigating upstream, investigating placemarks along the way. You come to Kum Ombo and notice the patterns formed by the agricultural fields and other land use. You continue south, noticing the sudden reduction in agriculture at city of Aswan. The GE label for Aswan provides a Wikipedia link where you learn it is one of the driest places on Earth. An exclamation mark appears as you approach the Aswan Dam. It reveals the explanation of how the double dam structure is used to control the river and store water. It also delivers the next mystery: “I am feed by international white and blue.” You continue upriver, crossing into Sudan finding yourself at Khartoum where the Nile is formed by two smaller rivers, the Blue Nile and the White Nile. You navigate to each river’s source; the Blue Nile to the east ends (or should I say begins) at Ethiopia’s Lake Tana. The White Nile flows from Lake Victoria in Tanzania. Realizing this lake is fed by several rivers, the ultimate origins of its waters come from Rwanda. Wait, there are a couple of other exclamation marks shining on the horizon. One in Liberia and the other further away to the east. You click the distant one which sweeps you over the landscape to China, settling at the headwaters of the Yellow River...

In this hypothetical scenario, the exploration of the GE landscape is driven by Easter eggs in the form of placemarks that are hidden until the user navigates close enough in GE to trigger them to be revealed. The strategic placement of placemarks along rivers draws the user’s attention to the visual scene and the text provided within the placemark serves to encourage further exploration. Each placemark serves as the equivalent of a
plot point by both directing and potentially redirecting the user’s attention to the visuals the creator of the placemarks aims to target. In this scenario, the educational target could be the rivers and how their situated contexts bi-directionally influence the landscape on the river (straight verses sinusoidal) and the impact of the river on the landscape (canyon verses estuary). Entered into the mix is human activity which impacts rivers (e.g. dam construction changes the landscape, provides irrigation which facilitates changes in landuse), as well as is influenced by rivers (e.g. settlement and agriculture facilitated by access to water).

While I am not suggesting that this depth of learning can or will be achieved simply through observation of images in GE, I do contend that Easter egg placemarks have the potential to scaffold users toward deeper learning through observation in the way plot points could in filmic narratives described by Simms (2010b). Such an observation-based form of teaching geography is not a new concept. It was championed as early as the mid-19th century by geographer and educator Arnold Guyot (Moore & Wilcox, 1932). Guyot was a proponent of “journey geography” whereby students learn not through rote memorization of place names, but rather as if taking a journey, for example down the Mississippi River:

From this, the cradle of the Mississippi, flows a little brook so small that you could easily leap across it, and not deep enough to prevent your wading through it. You would hardly believe that the little stream would become, on its way to the ocean, a great river large enough to carry vessels and steamboats through our country. Now it cannot carry even a little boat, and we must walk beside it as we
continue our journey along its course (p. 13 from Primary Geography as cited by Moore & Wilcox, 1932, p. 43).

With today’s technology, virtual journeys can be crafted nonlinearly and controlled by the student/user of GE. Easter eggs provide surprise and intrigue designed to inspire further exploration and engagement into the mystery they present. They serve as a proverbial carrot along the path of discovery, and thereby as a type of plot point in this visual narrative to direct the user’s focus while facilitating a natural progression through the narrative by sending the user (via the narrative of the exploration) to a different location and deeper into the discovery and learning process. Easter eggs allow the user to drive the experience, while providing direction and attention to what an expert might point out during a traditional teaching situation. Notice that the novice is still driving the experience and retains control of which direction to explore and which Easter egg to engage and when, resulting in an experience similar to Choose Your Own Adventure children’s book series previously described. Such nonlinearity in this form of narrative is undergirded by borrowing from nonlinear form of theater called hyperdrama.

**Conclusion**

Utilizing the visual and non-linear environment of GE, ABEE could support delivery of geography education outside the formal context of the classroom. The application of ABEE to GE may share conceptual resemblance to Type II uses of technology in education (Carpenter & Taylor, 2006; Gaytan, 2006) in that GE has already been used to create innovation in teaching (e.g. Goodchild, 2008; Google Earth Lessons, 2009; Jenkins, 2009; Kluge, et al., 2007), however I am not approaching this
subject from a formal education (classroom or instruction) perspective. In this
discussion, I am interested not in improving teaching with its explicit instructional
modality (not to say that classroom teaching is not important), but rather I am interested
in how instruction can manifest in non-formal environments, thereby providing implicit
instruction. In this environment, ABEE could work within the user-driven context to
provide a learning experience embedded in GE, maintaining a native feel to the user.
Files containing placemarks developed around the ABEE model could be served either
through GE (i.e. embedded in), similarly to current sponsored content, or as independent
KML files\(^6\) on the developer’s website or server. I have presented a scenario to
demonstrate the use of the ABEE model as a “narrative” approach translated to a visual
environment of GE, where the “text” is the imagery being explored and intended to teach
through observation with placemarks hidden as Easter eggs, which also serve to catalyze
exploration fueled by interest in solving the presented riddle. With an understanding of
the ABEE model, an educator could create learning experiences similar to those
proposed here. Teachers, activists, students, citizen scientists, or anyone with the desire
to educate could create impactful experiences in GE through the ABEE model. In return,
users of GE might benefit from new knowledge and could be scaffolded towards higher
levels of geographic literacy. Future research could explore the application of game
theory and interactive game design to transform the experience from a causal exploration
to an intentional search or goal quest resembling game play of current video and
computer games.

\(^6\) Keyhole Markup Language (KML) is the file format of Google Earth placemark files.
CHAPTER V
CONCLUSIONS

In this dissertation, I have traversed a path that connects the past and the future of Entertainment-Education by expanding its territory beyond the area of health education in which it has been used extensively to date. At the heart of the E-E methodology is the use of narrative, which is leveraged to provide a learning experience for entertainment consumers. Humans learn through observation, and learn more effectively when motivated through an emotional connection to the subject or the role model presenting the subject, be it a classroom teacher, a colleague, or an entertainment “star” (Bandura, 1986; Gardner, 2004; Sabido, 2004). By categorizing the existing body of literature in Chapter II, I have revealed not only the difficulty of finding appropriate literature upon which to base a literature review to address the question of how E-E might be used to teach academic concepts, but also used the metaphorical negative space revealed by creating a literature index to illuminate an area into which E-E can grow. This literature index revealed an interesting paucity of the use of E-E in communicating science or other formal education subjects, indicating a large territory into which the discipline could be expanded. With an E-E background established, I discussed in Chapter III the development of a model for using the traditional E-E methodology in a new arena, that of academic learning. Accomplished through analysis of a successful U.S. television series, I have developed an approach to using academic subjects to drive E-E stories, creating what I call an Academically-Based Entertainment-Education (ABEE) product or intervention. Lastly, in Chapter IV, I applied this new model to the non-linear
environment of new media as a way of understanding, and in some ways redefining, ABEE in a user-driven entertainment venue.

**Implications for Geography Education**

When used for geography education, ABEE holds the potential to produce learning experiences that not only leverage the power of the entertainment medium, but do so utilizing the narrative of both text and visual modalities. I can imagine using ABEE to develop film and television products in a variety of contexts and styles such as:

1. An animated show in the style of *Blue’s Clues* for preschool-aged children that develops spatial thinking skills through the adventures of a bird. Instead of looking for clues from the eyelevel of Blue the Dog, my geography version would explore for clues from the bird’s eye-view providing viewers with experience in interpreting the landscape and identifying objects from an overhead perspective.

2. A prime-time television adventure series where a strong female protagonist uses her analytical geography skills to understand and combat social injustices and environmental dangers.

3. A layer in GE providing exploration adventures with hidden Easter eggs leading gamers to view landscape features, the synthesis of which lead to development of the essential skills and knowledge recommended in the National Geography Standards (Geography Education Standards Project, 1994).

Because ABEE is rooted in narrative, and stories are creative products as flexible and expansive as the human mind, I suggest that the possibilities ABEE presents for teaching
geography are just as limitless. Neither is ABEE limited to geography but could be utilized for any academic subject or concept.

**Implications Beyond Geography Education**

ABEE was not created within a disciplinarian vacuum. Instead, it was derived from a mathematics-based television show that utilized math and logic not as context but as a narrative driver. By remaining context-independent, ABEE can potentially be used to communicate academic concepts from any discipline. The story becomes about how the concepts function as opposed to a story being rooted in a math setting. For example, contrast the television series *NUMB3RS*, about a mathematician who uses his math genius to solve crimes (math drives the story; any discipline could be substituted for math) with the movie *A Beautiful Mind*, about the challenges mathematician’s battle with mental illness (math as context; any infirmity could be substituted for mental illness).

**Future Research**

The model developed here can be refined through analysis of other television programs which integrate academic subjects into their narratives. It may also be refined through use, for example in assessing educative efficacy of ABEE interventions. Unless similar programs to *NUMB3RS* are identified, refinement of the ABEE model may be possible only through use and assessment of ABEE interventions themselves through a trial and error approach. However, this situation does not represent a lost cause. Remembering that *Sesame Street* was a trailblazer and subsequent shows such as *Blue’s Clues* have refined, and in some ways changed, the model for children’s entertainment-
based literacy education, the development of efficacious ABEE programs and subsequent model refinement may require following a similar path.

Specifically for geography, one possible area of further research might be an investigation of U.S. television writing convention where storylines are divided into the “A story” (primary plot) and the “B story” (secondary or subplot separate from the action of the primary plot) (Epstein, 2006). The A story encompasses the main story line for the episode usually using the show’s main characters. Nuances of characters are often revealed or developed through the B story. For example, each episode of *White Collar* (Eastin, 2009) finds protagonist Neil Caffrey, a convicted white collar criminal helping FBI agent Peter Burke catch bad guys as the primary storyline, but the B story serves a clue needed for Neil to discover who killed his girlfriend Kate. In a variation, Disney Channel’s *Phineas and Ferb* presents a more equal treatment of the A and B storyline. Each episode finds older sister Candace doing her best to bust her younger brothers, Phineas and Ferb, for building wild inventions leading to grand adventures (A story) while the family pet platypus, Perry, sneaks away to perform his secret agent duties to stop the evil Dr. Doofenshmirtz from taking over the tri-state area (B story). While these two storylines are completely unrelated, they always merge at the end of the episode when Perry destroys Doofenshmirtz’s evil contraption but not before it destroys Phineas and Ferb’s grand invention just before Candace is able to deliver her mother to the scene to catch the boys in the act.

The writing convention of related-yet-separate storylines in television serials offers an interesting mechanism through which geography may be presented in its full
spectrum of relationships (e.g. connecting patterns with processes, and vice versa, instead of just presenting one or the other). With geography’s dual nature of patterns and processes, it is conceivable that the equal treatment of A and B storylines could be utilized to focus on both aspects of a geographic concept with the end of the episode uniting the two, just as the writers of Phineas and Ferb do. In doing so, a television show could leverage the power of role modeling by the main character(s) to present how a geographer thinks as revealed through the action of the narrative.

The implications of this research path could reach far beyond geography education. As a potential outlet for educational outreach, ABEE interventions offer the potential to support formal education as well. Some innovative classroom teachers and college professors already find uses for film, television, and other forms of art and popular culture to either demonstrate academic concepts or to tie concepts to the world outside of the classroom. ABEE offers the potential to provide popular cultural artifacts that are more closely aligned with educational concepts. In this way, ABEE serves as a bridge linking the classroom to the lived experience, the formal to the informal. A healthy respect for both will be crucial for ABEE to succeed in a media-saturated society. In conversations I have had with entertainment industry professionals, it appears a bias exists associated with “educational” activities. That is not to say that Hollywood is intentionally “anti-education,” but only that, in my experience, the adjective “educational” seems to be immediately associated with children’s programming or public broadcasting. I believe ABEE would be severely limited in impact if it were restricted to this genre. Instead, I believe its greatest impact, will be seen if applied to
broader entertainment. The possibility of such application is in fact why I began this study with the analysis of *NUMB3RS*, a highly successful network television show.

Similarly, within the field of education, there may be a bias against entertainment as evidenced by the on-going debate over the existence of an intrinsic mechanism for learning within media (see "Media use in education," 1992 for a summary of the strong media verses weak media debate). Since ABEE merges entertainment and education, as opposed to layering one on top of the other, ABEE interventions may also usher in an era where the existing biases in entertainment against education and in education against entertainment are retired on both sides or at least revised significantly. When such a bi-directional relationship becomes established and manifested in for example ABEE-based television or film capable of building geographic literacy, I believe both industries (entertainment and education) will receive a significant benefit, but society as a whole will reap the larger reward.
REFERENCES

No Child Left Behind Act of 2001 (2002). Retrieved from

Egyptian oral rehydration therapy campaign. In A. Singhal, M. J. Cody, E. M.
Rogers & M. Sabido (Eds.), Entertainment-education and social change:
History, research, and practice (pp. 301-320). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum
Associates.

Egyptian Oral Rehydration Therapy campaign. In A. Singhal, M. J. Cody, E. M.
Rogers & M. Sabido (Eds.), Entertainment-education and social change:
History, research, and practice (pp. 301-320). Mahway, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum
Associates.


Singhal, M. J. Cody, E. M. Rogers & M. Sabido (Eds.), Entertainment-education
and social change: History, research, and practice (pp. 75-96). Mahway, NJ:
Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.


learning targeting the societal landscape of U.S. geographic illiteracy". Texas A&M University, College Station, TX.


APPENDIX A

VISUAL NOTATION OF SELECTED EPISODES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#207 Convergence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charlie Vision</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audience Vision</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Word Picture</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Math Concept</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#220 Guns and Roses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charlie Vision</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audience Vision</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Word Picture</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Math Concept</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
#221 Rampage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scene</th>
<th>Act 1</th>
<th>Act 2</th>
<th>Act 3</th>
<th>Act 4</th>
<th>Act 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Omitted Scene</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#305 The Mole

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scene</th>
<th>Act 1</th>
<th>Act 2</th>
<th>Act 3</th>
<th>Act 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Omitted Scene</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### #319 Pandora’s Box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scene</th>
<th>Act 1</th>
<th>Act 2</th>
<th>Act 3</th>
<th>Act 4</th>
<th>Act 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plot Twist

#### Omitted Scene

---

### #401 Trust Metric

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scene</th>
<th>Act 1</th>
<th>Act 2</th>
<th>Act 3</th>
<th>Act 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plot Twist

#### Omitted Scene
### Appendix A (continued)

#### #403 Hollywood Homicide

| Scene | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Act   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

#### #406 In Security

| Scene | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Act   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

Plot Twist

Omitted Scene
### Appendix A (continued)

#### #414 Checkmate

<p>| Scene | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 | 51 | 52 | 53 | 54 | 55 | 56 | 57 | 58 | 59 | 60 | 61 | 62 | 63 | 64 | 65 | 66 |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Act</th>
<th>Teaser</th>
<th>Act 1</th>
<th>Act 2</th>
<th>Act 3</th>
<th>Act 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charlie Vision</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audience Vision</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Word Picture</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Math Concept</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### #509 Conspiracy Theory

<p>| Scene | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 | 51 |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Act</th>
<th>Teaser</th>
<th>Act 1</th>
<th>Act 2</th>
<th>Act 3</th>
<th>Act 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charlie Vision</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audience Vision</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Word Picture</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Math Concept</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plot Twist

Omitted Scene
#609 Ultimatum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Act</th>
<th>Scene</th>
<th>Speech Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Teaser</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plot Twist**

**Omitted Scene**
APPENDIX B

SCENES FROM SCRIPTS

Script pages for scenes from 7 of the 13 episodes selected for analysis are presented here to show how the writers used math and logic concepts within the show. I have provided annotations to illuminate components relevant to this discussion.

Episode #207 Convergence

Scene 4 .......................................................................................................... 245
Scene 8 .......................................................................................................... 249
Scene 11 ........................................................................................................ 252
Scene 26 ........................................................................................................ 255
Scene 31 ........................................................................................................ 258

Episode #220 Guns and Roses

Scene 12 ........................................................................................................ 262
Scene 19 ........................................................................................................ 265
Scene 29 ........................................................................................................ 271

Episode # 305 The Mole

Scene 14 ........................................................................................................ 275
Scene 16 ........................................................................................................ 278
Scene 26 ........................................................................................................ 282
Scene 43 ........................................................................................................ 285

7 Script excerpts are used with permission from CBS Studios and the individual screenwriters. Due to time limitations, I was not able to seek permissions from writers of all 13 episodes.
Episode #318 Democracy

Scene 16 ........................................................................................................  288
Scene 38 ........................................................................................................  293
Scene 45 ........................................................................................................  296

Episode #414 Checkmate

Scene 15 ........................................................................................................  299
Scene 24 ........................................................................................................  301
Scene 40 ........................................................................................................  304

Episode #509 Conspiracy Theory

Scene 29 ........................................................................................................  307
Scene 41 ........................................................................................................  310

Episode #608 Ultimatum

Scene 44 ........................................................................................................  313
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence” (Heuton & Falacci, 2005a), Scene 4

ACT ONE

INT. FBI - WAR ROOM - DAY

Don, Megan and Charlie, with an assemblage of evidence from SEVEN HOME INVASIONS. PHOTOS, family pictures, lists of stolen items, family contacts - A HUG GE GRID OF INFORMATION.

DON
LAPD asked for our assistance after the fifth home invasion. There’s no useful forensics. They have weapons but haven’t fired them in any of the seven robberies.

MEGAN
All the victim families live in exclusive neighborhoods, own expensive, valuable items. They have home security systems, but the attacks come right when they’re arriving home -- when they’ve deactivated the system.

Charlie looks at the evidence board, seeing the faces of the victims, some badly beaten. Don steps up beside him -- indicates two photos -- two middle-aged M En, dead.

CHARLIE
Who are they?

DON
Fathers. Both of them fought back, trying to protect their families.

Charlie turns away.

DON (cont’d)
We need to know how they’re picking the homes. We’ve been using traditional methods.

MEGAN
But so far there’s no commonalities between the families, other than all are wealthy.

DON
You have any other ideas?

(Continued)
246

Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 4 (continued)

NUMB3RS #207/20 "Convergence" Goldenrod REV 10/3/05

CONTINUED:

CHARLIE

I would try [data mining], a mathematical system for analyzing information --

MEGAN

Right, Army Intelligence uses it to identify possible terrorist activity --

DON

How would it work?

CHARLIE

I design an algorithm based on the crimes, it analyzes all the data and identifies correlations.

DON

Okay, we’ll get you what we have on the seven families --

MEGAN

-- where they live, go to school, shop, dine out, who cleans their pools, repairs their cars --

CHARLIE

I’ll need more than that.

DON

More on the families --?

CHARLIE

More on everything, all crime stats for the past six months for the county.

MEGAN

Won’t that much data make it harder to find what you’re looking for?

CHARLIE

The opposite -- more data means more chances to find something.

A beat as he searches for a way to explain --

CHARLIE (cont’d)

When you do a [jigsaw puzzle] --

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 4 (continued)

NUMB3RS #207/20 "Convergence" Goldenrod REV 10/3/05
4 CONTINUED: (2) 4

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION:

A table top, maybe 10-20 pieces of a 500-piece puzzle.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
You start with a few pieces, the rest are in the box --

See a BOX filled with hundreds of puzzle pieces --

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
All those pieces eventually fit the picture -- all the pieces you need and nothing more comes in the box.

The PIECES come together to create the complete PUZZLE IMAGE (a beautiful, idyllic home).

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
But with a real-world problem, the pieces -- the data -- doesn’t come preselected -- presorted.

The PIECES fly apart again and end up back in the box.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Using data-mining to find links in real life -- it’s like trying to solve a jigsaw puzzle when the pieces you need are mixed in with pieces from many other puzzles.

FOUR ADDITIONAL, DIFFERENT PUZZLES appear -- break apart -- and the pieces fall into the BOX.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Now, if you grab a few pieces from the box --

A hand reaches into the box, grabs a fistful --

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
-- most won’t fit. You’ve got to go through the entire box and pick out the pieces that fit your puzzle.

A selection of pieces rise out of the box, fall onto the table, arrange back into a finished puzzle image.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 4 (continued)

NUMB3RS #207/20 “Convergence” Goldenrod REV 10/3/05
CONTINUED: (3)

BACK TO SCENE:

CHARLIE (cont’d)
The algorithm goes through it all, pulls out what fits together.

DON
I’ll get you our Uniform Crime Reports...

INT. FBI - INTERVIEW ROOM - DAY

Megan with MRS. BLOOM, wife of the murdered Dr. Bloom. She’s composed, but shows effects of trauma.

A FOLDER on the table. Photos, items from the Bloom House. Pearl necklace, gold figurine, watch.

MRS. BLOOM
These things, most have been in our families for years. That was my grandfather’s watch.

She fights not to cry --

MRS. BLOOM (cont’d)
I don’t care about any of that -- but Richard. He was only trying to protect our son --

MEGAN
I know, Mrs. Bloom. I’m sorry.

MRS. BLOOM
He just couldn’t bear to see people hurt. It’s why he became a doctor.

She gets a hold of herself.

MEGAN
I know this is hard... But I need to know whether this lamp is an authentic period piece?

He shows her a PHOTO of a Dirk Van Erp lamp. Brass and mica.

MRS. BLOOM
Yes, it was made by Dirk Van Erp. It’s one of a pair.

Her voice goes quiet.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence” (Heuton & Falacci, 2005a), Scene 8

LARRY
Your status singled you out.
People scrutinize your work because
of your reputation.

CHARLIE
And that’s why he’s doing it, to
ruin my reputation. The Eppes
Convergence made me. If it’s
wrong, then what am I?

Larry’s a touch annoyed --

LARRY
(half to himself)
A brilliant young theoretician with
an ego problem?

CHARLIE
What?

Charlie’s cell rings -- he picks it up, listens -- hangs up.

CHARLIE (cont’d)
I gotta go -- the computer lab says
the algorithm for Don’s case kicked
out some findings --

He heads out --

LARRY
Wisdom and genius -- rarely present
in equal abundance.

INT. FBI - WAR ROOM - DAY

Charlie tapes up a SCROLL of PRINTOUT on the windows. A LINE
of CALENDAR DAYS in linear progression. He’s also put up
several normal calendars. He stands back to take it in for a
moment. Then dives forward and circles days with a marker.

Colby at the door, looking in. Don and Megan walk up.

COLBY
Your brother’s starting to freak me
out a little.

DON
Just a little?

Don smiles, walks up to Charlie.
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 8 (continued)

DON (cont’d)

What’s up?

CHARLIE

Calendars are wonderful analog mathematical tools. They create a universal timeline for societie by interpreting astrophysical movement.

MEGAN

What are you talking about?

CHARLIE

Calendar isn’t based on easily divisible factors. They originally tried to make them like that -- 360 days divides evenly, but it doesn’t match what you see in the night sky. So ancient calendars would add an extra month every eight years or tack on five extra --

Don steps closer to the PRINT-OUT -- looking -- at seven days marked in RED, five in BLUE.

DON

This is on the home invasions?

CHARLIE

Once I got the data mining algorithm up and running, I started a close analysis of the chronology -- the dates and times --

CODY

We looked for a timeline pattern, we couldn’t see one --

CHARLIE

Because you didn’t look in the same way my analysis looks --

(pointing to the printout)

The red days are known attacks, blue days are when the analysis says there should be attacks, but there aren’t. What I want to ask is: How do you know there aren’t?

DON

No home invasions on those dates --

(Continued)
CHARLIE
But maybe these same guys commit other types of crimes.

MEGAN
You mean, not just home invasions --

DON
So, if we identify new crimes, maybe we find new evidence.

CHARLIE
I think you should look for crimes by gunmen fitting the same description, occurring in the times I’ve marked in blue.

MEGAN
Charlie, the pattern -- can it tell us when to expect the next attack?

CHARLIE
Patterns like this are clearer in hindsight, but difficult to use as predictors. There's an erratic frequency -- some robberies a few days apart, followed by a break, then one or two hits, followed by shorter breaks --

DON
Anything would help --

Charlie takes a minute to think, hard, then goes to the printout -- points --

CHARLIE
This is my best guess -- it’s possible the next attack could occur in as soon as three days.

END OF ACT ONE
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence” (Heuton & Falacci, 2005a), Scene 11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBERS #207/20 &quot;Convergence&quot; Goldenrod REV 10/3/05</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10 CONTINUED:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEGAN</th>
<th>We do -- the Porsche robbery. One of the guys on the crew fired into the air to scare the owner.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAVID</td>
<td>We find that bullet -- maybe we could match it --</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLBY</td>
<td>Hold on. Find a bullet fired straight up? That won't be easy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DON</td>
<td>But not impossible. Find the cops who first responded to the call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAVID</td>
<td>They would have done a neighborhood canvass to try to ID the type of round that was fired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| DON (to Megan) | Talk to the carjack victims. And let's see if we can run down the lead from the antique store owner, find this fence named Roley. |

**INT. CHARLIE'S OFFICE - DAY**

Charlie sits at his work table. Watching an **ANT FARM**. David and Colby walk in, see Charlie transfixed.

**DAVID**

Bad time?

Charlie looks up -- surprised but not embarrassed.

**CHARLIE**

No. Come in. I'm waiting for a new run of the data mining program.

They enter, look at the ants. Charlie points.

**CHARLIE (cont'd)**

Emergence theory. The whole is greater than the sum of its parts. (MORE)

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 "Convergence" (Heuton & Falacci, 2005a), Scene 11 (continued)

NUMBERS #207/20 "Convergence" Goldenrod REV 10/3/05

11 CONTINUED: 11

CHARLIE (cont'd)
Individually, ants have limited capabilities, but the colony can be viewed as a single, complex organism. But you aren't here to talk about ants, are you?

COLBY
Actually, we have a little bet. David here thinks you might be able to help us find a needle in a haystack.

DAVID
A bullet in Brentwood, to be exact.

COLBY
Checking the time periods where you said there might be related crimes, we found three carjackings. There was gunfire at one.

DAVID
We find that bullet, maybe we can match it to a gun.

Charlie gets up, goes to a chalkboard.

CHARLIE
The bullet -- was it fired parallel to the ground, or at an angle?

DAVID
According to the crime report --

He points a finger straight up --

DAVID (cont’d)
-- into the air. Not sure of the exact angle.

CHARLIE
And what type of gun?

David and Colby exchange a look --

COLBY
We don’t have that for sure, either.

CHARLIE
Okay, so we’ll be working with at least two variables --

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 11 (continued)

NUMBERS #207/20 "Convergence" Goldenrod REV 10/3/05

11 CONTINUED: (2) 11

He starts writing an equation --

12 INT. FBI - WAR ROOM - DAY 12

End scene

Megan gets off the phone as Don comes over. She’s got files and printouts around her.

MEGAN
That was the third carjack victim. Just like in the home invasions, these guys knew about specific valuables. They took his watch, even though he had it hidden under his jacket. They made Victim two give up a $35,000 ring.

DON
Were the victims followed, forced to pull over?

Megan goes to the board, puts up a report for each victim.

MEGAN
No. Carjack Victim One locked his keys in his car. Called Triple A on her cellphone. Only ten minutes later, these guys show up.

She puts up a second report.

MEGAN (cont’d)
Victim 2 got lost, entered the destination into her navigation system. Victim 3 ran out of gas, called his on-board assistance service, spoke to a real operator. But again, the robbers got there first -- with a can of gas.

DON
They’re eavesdropping on cellphone calls?

MEGAN
Maybe, but that wouldn’t explain their knowledge of the victim’s possessions. And, the victims have different phone systems.

DON
Well, they’re tapping into these victims somehow.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 26

INT. EFFES HOUSE - GARAGE - DAY
Charlie and Larry bent over a work table. Alan walks in.

ALAN
Charlie, you see my cell phone? I can’t find it anywhere -- oh no.

On the table is a CELL PHONE -- completely dismantled.

CHARLIE
We’ll put it all back together.

ALAN
You couldn’t use one of your own?

LARRY
I refuse to allow the small quiet moments of my life be invaded by these devices of distraction.

CHARLIE
I need mine.

ALAN
You know I’m not a house-bound retiree anymore. I’m starting a new business. A cell phone might come in handy, don’t you think?

CHARLIE
You’ll have it in an hour. Or two. We just wanted to take a look at the GPS chip.

ALAN
And why would you need to do that?

LARRY
Every new phone is embedded with a tiny chip that acts as a global positioning receiver.

CHARLIE
It’s my theory that the home invasion robbers are using them to track their victims.

(Continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 26 (continued)

NUM3RS #207/20 "Convergence" Goldenrod REV 10/3/05 40.
26 CONTINUED: 26

ALAN
How would that work?

CHARLIE
A cell phone is essentially a radio --

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION

Graphic representation of a cell phone & the chip inside.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Whenever it’s on, it’s sending radio signals. To let cell towers know where the phone is -- so a person can move from one cell zone to another without losing a call.

Graphic representations of cell zones and towers.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
At the same time, the GPS chip receives signals from outer space. Specifically from at least three geosynchronous satellites.

Graphic representations of satellites in geosynchronous orbits -- THREE SATELLITES beam signals down to earth.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Using a geometric method called three dimensional trilateration, the GPS chip uses the signals from the satellites to calculate its exact location on earth.

Fast representation of a trilateration calculation --

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
This information is transmitted constantly from the cell phone to cell towers.

RETURN TO SCENE:

CHARLIE (cont’d)
The data can be used by police and emergency services. Also for roadside assistance, tracking truck fleets -- even lets parents keep tabs on teenage children.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 26 (continued)

NUMBERS #207/20 "Convergence" Goldenrod REV 10/3/05

CONTINUED: (2)

LARRY
Too Big Brother for me -- that's why I refuse to own a cellphone.

CHARLIE
But intercepting these signals is beyond the grasp of most criminals.

ALAN
Well, I'll tell you this. If all my years of supervising urban infrastructure has taught me anything -- there's always a work-around solution.

CHARLIE
You're right -- and somehow they managed to get into the system.

OMITTED

EXT. UPSCALE HOUSE - SHORT TIME LATER - DAY

Police officers and detectives in and out the front door. David and Colby arrive.

INT. UPSCALE HOUSE - CONTINUOUS

They walk in -- as in the teaser, signs of violence and disarray. They go into a living room.

Coroner’s Investigator works over two bodies, an older COUPLE. A MAN sprawled on the floor. A woman across an overstuffed chair. The MAN beaten to death.

Megan and Don talk. David and Colby come up to them.

MEGAN
Married couple, 74 and 77. From the evidence, looks like the man struggled with the robbers.

DON
They beat him to death, then strangled the woman. Two older people who couldn't have put up much of a fight.

MEGAN
They're acting more frequently, and killing more readily.

END OF ACT THREE
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence” (Heuton & Falacci, 2005a), Scene 31

ACT FOUR

30 INT. FBI - FORENSIC TECH ROOM - DAY

CLOSE UP: Computer MONITOR display of a MAGNIFIED IMAGE of the .44 BULLET. The partial metal jacket slightly deformed. Striation marks visible on the sides.

FBI BALLISTICS SOFTWARE runs -- looking for matches with bullets registered from other crimes.

WIDER: Megan, David & Colby over a TECH's shoulder.

MEGAN
Let's hope the bullet you found is the one from the carjacking.

DAVID
Not a lot of bullets lying around Brentwood.

MEGAN
Yeah, it's more of a slash your throat kinda neighborhood.

COLBY
We're gonna run the slug through the ATF's Bullet Trap data base... See if we can trace the gun it was fired from to a previous crime.

MEGAN
We need a lead. After eight hits, they think they're invulnerable, that we can't stop them. They'll be more reckless, more dangerous.

31 INT. LARRY'S OFFICE - DAY

Larry at his board. Not math, but odd shapes and symbols. A physicist conceptualizing. Charlie comes to the door.

CHARLIE
Can I bounce some ideas off you?

LARRY
I heard on the radio -- two more people killed by the robbers Don's trying to catch.

CHARLIE
Yeah. It's bad.
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 31 (continued)

LARRY
The data mining hasn’t given you any specific connections you can work with yet?

CHARLIE
Hard to say. One commonality the analysis keeps highlighting is cell phones -- but everybody has cellphones.

Charlie goes to the board and quickly draws eight circles -- and then lines from them that lead to a common point--

CHARLIE (cont’d)
Then there’s a second commonality --

-- where Charlie draws an X.

CHARLIE (cont’d)
-- that has no defined value. The algorithm’s identified that all families have rare, collectible items. All insured.

LARRY
Ask Amita to look over your program. She’s the best coder we got.

CHARLIE
I don’t think that’s where the problem is. Besides, she’s always talking with Penfield.

LARRY
Well, he is a brilliant mathematician, and a good conversationalist.

CHARLIE
Oh great, another member of the Penfield Fan Club. Why don’t you all get t-shirts or something?

LARRY
Yes, well, I heard that his analysis of the Epps Convergence was a bit -- pointed.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 31 (continued)

CHARLIE
Sure, he’s bright, he’s got insight. But he’s so full of himself, so annoyingly confident.

Larry raises his eyebrows, Charlie imitates Marshall.

CHARLIE (cont’d)
“Certainly in extending the calculation for $S$ to an infinite unitary group -- it would be obvious that my genius would mandate, upon my death, the inclusion of my brain in the Smithsonian.”

Charlie laughs. Larry’s looking past him -- at Penfield standing in the doorway with Amita.

MARSHALL PENFIELD
Actually, I’d prefer someone take my brain on a road trip -- like they did with Einstein’s.

AMITA
Hey, Charlie --

CHARLIE
Hey.

AMITA
Charlie, Marshall and I went to your office looking for you, and we kinds saw what you had up on the chalkboard --

MARSHALL PENFIELD
You have one problem I found interesting as it relates to my main field -- set theory.

He goes up to where Charlie’s standing, looks at his rough graph of eight circles, eight lines leading to a point.

MARSHALL PENFIELD (cont’d)
This is the same thing, right?

CHARLIE
Could be -- why?

(Continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #207 “Convergence”, Scene 31 (continued)

AMIDA

Marshall’s new research at Princeton is in set theory, something he calls “deep current” sets --

CHARLIE

(warily)
And what are those?

MARSHALL PENFIELD

Connections between groups that are hard to detect, but that can affect all the other sets. Kinda like how currents beneath the surface of the ocean influence weather patterns in the atmosphere.

Charlie stares at Marshall, then at his simple diagram.

CHARLIE

You mean there’s something underneath that we can’t see --

AUDIENCE VISION -- a generic weather map -- a half dozen air currents swirling different directions above an ocean --

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)

Shifting to focus on the ocean where a wide current flows, perspective shifting to show that it’s responsible for kicking off all the small air currents above --

BACK TO SCENE:

CHARLIE (cont’d)

Have you developed methods of analysis that help you define the unidentified connections?

MARSHALL PENFIELD

Oh yeah, sure. Even if I can’t tell you where the deep current is, I can tell you were to look.

Off Charlie’s look of intensifying interest --
Episode #220 “Guns and Roses” (Port, 2006a), Scene 12

ANNIE
She was having problems at home.

MEGAN
With her husband?

ANNIE
Two ATF Agents maintaining a relationship isn’t exactly the easiest thing to do in our business.

MEGAN
Got it... So, how serious were the problems?

ANNIE
Pretty serious I think. Something he did backed her in a corner. I don’t know what it was, but she said she was thinking of calling it quits with him.

(off Megan)
They don’t call it eating your gun for nothing. Do they?

INT. BUNKER - MUGG - DAY
Megan talks with Don.

MEGAN
Not sure if this is what you wanna hear, but based on what her team told me, it looks like Nikki Davis killed herself.

Charlie walks in --

CHARLIE
Sorry. But I’m not as convinced. Not doubting your expertise, but I’ve been looking through Nikki Davis’s file. She was a leader in her community, outstanding agent.

MEGAN
Who was experiencing a pretty bad depression.

CHARLIE
Which is a fairly strong negative. But look at her file.

(MORE)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 12 (continued)

NUMB3RS #220/33 “Guns and Roses” Cherry REV 3-22-06

12 CONTINUED:

CHARLIE (cont’d)
Commendation after commendation. Recently made supervisor, strong parental support... siblings. All of that should have outweighed any transitory depression... Imagine figure skating...

AUDIENCE VISION --
A pair of figure skaters glide and spin across the ice.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
When figure skaters perform a routine judges multiply the scores on the jumps by a difficulty factor...

The duo performs a synchronized flip jump...

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
-- if the difficulty factor is large enough, even with a mistake...

And fall.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
And subsequent deductions... the skaters can still win the competition.

The duo waves to the crowd, medals around their necks.

BACK TO SCENE

CHARLIE (cont’d)
All the positive features in Nikki’s life multiply her natural coping ability by a certain factor. This weighs against the depression. I think we should look at it further.

DON
Look, I’m the first to admit that I don’t want to believe Nikki killed herself, but I need more than math, Charlie. If I rule that her death was a homicide, I need evidence.

David walks in.
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 12 (continued)

DAVID
I may have it... Nikki's husband's flight from Texas arrived, only he wasn't on it.

DON
What do you mean, not on it?

DAVID
I checked the manifest. He never got on the plane.

MEGAN
Guy finds out his wife's dead and he doesn't fly home?

DAVID
Ran a trace of his cell.

Hands Don a copy of the report.

DON
Five-two area code, that's Mexico.

DAVID
Night of Nikki's death, Davis was in Mexico City not in Texas like he was supposed to be.
(than...)
I also traced her phone. All calls for the last forty-eight hours.

DON
And?

David looks at Megan.

DAVID
One number popped out. Page two.

Don flips the page, stares at the sheet. Silent.

DAVID (cont'd)
Last person she called Don, it was you.

Off Megan, Charlie, then Don --

END OF ACT ONE
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses” (Port, 2006a), Scene 19-20

NUMB3RS #220/33 "Guns and Roses" Cherry REV 3-22-06

CONTINUED: (2)

ALAN (cont’d)
You know, we were lucky it never came to that, but I would have understood if she’d chosen to. I wouldn’t have blamed myself.
(off Don)
You understand what I’m saying?
(breat)
Do you?

DON
I’ve got to get going. See ya later dad.

INT. NIKKI’S BEDROOM - DAY

CLOSE ON GUN - BOOM!

PULL BACK TO REVEAL -- David lays in Nikki’s bed... a Sig-Sauer (blanks) in his hand points at the ceiling.

The room is identical to the way it was when Nikki died including an open window. Except:

IN A SIDE ROOM --

Charlie and Larry stare at a plasma split screen that shows a digital oscillograph. On the top is the ACOUSTIC FINGERPRINT of the original recording. On the bottom is the acoustic fingerprint of the test gun shot. They record the gunshot on their laptop. Everyone wears headphones and goggles.

LARRY
Still doesn’t match. Are you sure we set up the microphones outside correctly?

CHARLIE
Double-checked them myself.

LARRY
And we can’t discount that in an experiment such as this, there’s an extreme level of difficulty.

David walks over...

DAVID
Why’s that?

CHARLIE
Because there was an open window, the sound envelope and how the waves reached the microphones require complex calculations.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 19-20 (continued)

LARRY
In an auditory sense, a gunshot is fairly unique... as it produces a short, but intense sound impulse.

DAVID
Which is why we wear earphones at the range.

LARRY
Exactly. The blast strains the capacity of the human ear, which detects noise more efficiently and distinguishes sounds from a much wider spectrum than even most audio equipment.

DAVID
And how's this gonna help me with a timeline?

CHARLIE
If we can re-create this original acoustic fingerprint, then we'll have matched it to the sound that was recorded by three separate LAPD officers. Forensic acoustic experts did this in the JFK assassination to determine if there was a gunman on the grassy knoll.

Charlie look at photo of Nikki's crime scene.

CHARLIE (cont'd)
Everything appears to be exactly the same.

LARRY
Were the curtains open or closed?

DAVID
Does that matter?

CHARLIE
Cloth doesn't reflect as much sound back as glass.

Larry looks at the acoustic fingerprint on the plasma.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 19-20 (continued)

LARRY
As we fire test shots, our program measures muzzle blast and echo pattern. It’s absolutely essential to the understanding of acoustical matching procedure that impulses are not moved or eliminated.

David walks back to the bed...

CHARLIE
Ready?

David puts his finger on the trigger and BOOM!

On the plasma screen -- a new acoustic fingerprint -- that doesn’t match.

CHARLIE (cont’d)
Not even close.

DAVID
Maybe it wasn’t a gunshot?

CHARLIE
No, it’s a gunshot, but--

LARRY
The recorded waveform was bouncing around more. Something’s missing.

DAVID
Missing?

CHARLIE
Is it possible some evidence was removed from the bedroom?

DAVID
Shell casing, maybe.

LARRY
With these variations, it would have to have been something much larger.

DAVID
Her body? But that’s why I’m in the room shooting the gun. Right?

But Charlie’s mind is now focused on the room...
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 19-20 (continued)

QUICK FLASH of STYLED SUICIDE -- The slide of the gun, gunshot.

CHARLIE
I need to talk to Don.

INT. FBI - BULLPEN - NIGHT
Megan enters. Finds Don at his desk, working.

DON
According to her husband she had cancer. She was dying.

MEGAN
Even if it's true you had every right to pursue the line of investigation you did.

DON
I was just hoping that the job didn't make her that unhappy.

MEGAN
You know, there's a reason law enforcement officers are seven times more likely to kill ourselves than civilians.

DON
If you're trying to cheer me up, it's not working.

MEGAN
It's our personalities, Don. Most of us go into this job because we're trying to test ourselves, prove ourselves... We're afraid that if we ask for help, people are gonna think we're weak.

Charlie and David walk in.

DAVID
Think Charlie's got something.

DON
What do you mean?

(Continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 19-20 (continued)

CHARLIE

Sound waves. A gunshot produces a sound wave that travels. If the wave hits a reflective substance like rock, the air-pressure energy of the sound wave moves back in the opposite direction. Towards you.

DON

An echo.

CHARLIE

Exactly. But those returning sound waves do a lot more than just let us hear our own voice. They tell us what we cannot see. Take a bat for example...

AUDIENCE VISION --

A bat hangs. Sound waves spread out and hit a frog.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont'd)

A bat emits a sound wave and listens carefully to the echoes that it causes.

The sound waves bounce back off the frog.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont'd)

By hearing how long it takes an echo to return, the bat’s brain automatically knows how far away the animal is.

The frog hops... the bat zeroes in on it.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont'd)

The bigger the animal, the louder the echo.

Small sound waves bounce off of a bug.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont'd)

Most importantly, if the animal is moving towards or away from the bat, the pitch of the echo will be raised or lowered accordingly. It’s called the **Doppler Effect**.

The bug hops away...

(Continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 19-20 (continued)

RESUME CHARLIE AND GROUP --

DON
Charlie, what does it mean?

CHARLIE
We recreated the acoustics of
Nikki’s room with the comm system
the agents used. What we found was
that something was missing...

MEGAN
Missing?

CHARLIE
Actually, someone. -- Don, someone
else was in the room when Nikki died.

END OF ACT TWO

END OF ACT TWO
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses” (Port, 2006a), Scene 29

Megan
The guns this robbery crew uses are military quality.

Don
Which Davis has access to.

David
Right. He recovered those military assault rifles in that bust last year.

Megan
He’s under financial pressure from his wife’s illness. Selling guns would have been a way to help her.

David
Nikki finds out. Calls you when she has no other place to turn.

Megan
And gets killed before she has a chance to do it again.

Don’s running it over in his head. Turns to plasma.

Don
I want 24/7 surveillance on everyone in this photo. [points] This guy Mitchell popped out of his hole, I wanna know about it.

Off our group -- and on Mitchell.

INT. CHARLIE’S OFFICE - DAY

Amita knocks. Finds Larry and Charlie.

Amita
Am I interrupting something?

Charlie
Another Fleischhardt doomsday prophecy.

Larry
You make me sound like Chicken Little. I was merely advising Charlie as to the dangers of unleashing a cosmic force.

(continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 29 (continued)

CHARLIE
Larry isn’t thrilled with cataloguing DNA.

AMITA
Do you have something to hide, Larry?

LARRY
My DNA’s as pure as the driven snow... But human history lives in our genes... it contains the footprints of our ancestors... tells us where we came from.

AMITA
I’m not sure I’d mind knowing that.

LARRY
Individually. But what about how it can be used? What are the safeguards? Experience tells us that once something’s out of the bottle, it’s out of the bottle for all time.

CHARLIE
Again with the bottle...

LARRY
It’s a metaphor, Charles.

AMITA
Well, one could certainly understand the hazards in not being too careful.

LARRY
Which is exactly why I find it judicious to move slowly and decisively.

Amita looks at Charlie, who continues to work.

AMITA
This from a man who sold his house, with nowhere to live.

She and Larry exchange a small, smile.

(continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 29 (continued)

CHARLIE
Okay. I’ve identified several groups of genetic markers called haplotypes. Now I need a set of algorithms to compare them against the Bio department’s photo base.

LARRY
And this could identify the people who left traces of their DNA in this Agent’s house?

CHARLIE
Imagine a blueprint for a home...

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION
Begin visual demonstration

Close on a blueprint...

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
It tells you what kind of home you’re going to build, a Colonial for example.

We see the blueprint morph into frame of a Colonial.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
But there are variables, hundreds of variables, color, size, roof type. The prints don’t tell us this.

Our framed house changes, color and roof type, as Charlie talks.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
By looking at thousands of Colonial homes from across the country, we know certain things. Colonials aren’t purple, they’re not made of brick, they don’t have flat roofs...

Rows of Colonial Homes slide by, frame by frame, one after the other.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
By applying a statistical index, we can sort out the common characteristics among Colonial Homes and build our own.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #220 “Guns and Roses”, Scene 29 (continued)

NUMB3RS #220/33 "Guns and Roses" Cherry REV 3-22-06

CONTINUED: (3)

Our Colonial, a mixture of different pieces is built.

RESUME SCENE --

CHARLIE (cont’d)
With a little luck, I should be able to put a statistical face on all of Don’s samples.

LARRY
Like some DNA Bizarro World.

On Charlie, Anita,

INT. EFFES HOUSE – NIGHT

Don sits on the couch. Alan nearby.

DON
When you join the FBI they talk about pride, what it means to wear the badges... Even let you hold Dillinger’s gun...

ALAN
But they never tell you about these kinds of cases, do they.

DON
The weird thing is knowing that Nikki was murdered, it doesn’t change the fact that she was unhappy and in a bad relationship.

ALAN
Sounds like you’re projecting.

DON
Truth is I don’t know anyone on the job who has a great relationship.

ALAN
C’mon. That can’t be true.

DON
It is... I mean, I’ve involved you and Charlie in some of my stuff, but really, you guys don’t know the half of it.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole” (Port, 2006b), Scene 14

13 CONTINUED:

CHEN
I’ll speak with the Ambassador, see what I can do...

INT. FBI — WAR ROOM -- NIGHT
Don, Megan enter, find David.

DAVID
What’d the Consulate General say?

MEGAN
That he didn’t know her very well.

DAVID
(joking)
Well, he’s either telling the truth or the Chinese have a pretty liberal hiring policy...

DON
What’s up?

DAVID
Credit card had a bunch of charges to night clubs, lingerie stores and the occasional “adult” store.

MEGAN
Not exactly the image her neighbors painted...

DON
Run her with LAPD Vice. Marco too. See what else she was hiding.

MEGAN
We still don’t know if this girl was even murdered.

Charlie enters --

CHARLIE
Actually, we do. As promised, I have your answer about whether this was an accident.

DON
Charlie, what’d you skip classes?

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 14 (continued)

CHARLIE
Lunch... and dinner... Do you guys have a sandwich or something?

DON
We'll send out. What do you got?

Charlie starts to hook up his laptop.

CHARLIE
Well, at first I was using a steady motion algorithm to try to determine the victim's movement at impact. But my results were inconclusive.

DAVID
But you persevered.

Charlie walks and imitates the motion he describes.

CHARLIE
I imagined walking... the motion of her feet... Then it became obvious, curtate cycloid.

MEGAN
Curtate cycloid, of course.

CHARLIE
Think of someone’s stride like the moon orbiting around the Earth...

AUDIENCE VISION --

We see an animated moon...

CHARLIE {V.O.} {CONT’D}
As the moon moves around the Earth and the Earth moves around the sun, the moon traces out a curtate cycloid curve in space.

The moon spins and circles the Earth...

CHARLIE {V.O.} {CONT’D}
When you walk it’s really a series of little circles rotating inside a larger circle.

An animated heel swings on an arc past the knee....

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 14 (continued)

14 CONTINUED:

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
The heel orbiting backward, then forward past the knee is a small circle within the larger circle of walking...

RESUME SCENE

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
From there, I could probabilistically determine the leg motion of your victim at the point of impact.

Megan
And this helps us how?

CHARLIE
The marks on her legs that the vehicle’s lights made, they’re high.

Don
High?

CHARLIE
The bumper of the vehicle was rising on impact.

Don
So, the car was accelerating.

Megan
Which means this was no accident.

END OF ACT ONE
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole” (Port, 2006b), Scene 16

CONTINUED:

DAVID
Don. You’re gonna wanna check this out. Tech’s just found something on Kim’s laptop.

INT. TECH ROOM - MOMENTS LATER
Don and David enter, where TECH works.

DON
What do we got?

TECH
Web sites. Mostly porn.

Charlie enters....

DAVID
Explains why she’s buying five hundred dollar lingerie on Rodeo Drive.

CHARLIE
Megan said you guys found something?

DAVID
Michelle Kim’s laptop, she had a thing for porn sites.

CHARLIE
(but then--)
Did she save any images from these websites?

TECH
She downloaded quite a few images.

We see several windows open on the computer, each a JPG image of a body part of a naked woman.

DON
What are you thinking?

CHARLIE
Just that the NSA’s discovered that groups like al-Qaeda and Hezbollah encrypt messages in photographs. (then)
With some simple software you could hide numbers, photos... any image you wanted.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 16 (continued)

DON
Yeah, but these groups have no connection to China, right?

CHARLIE
True... but there are more Chinese operatives in the U.S. today then during the cold war.

DAVID
Doing what?
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 16 (continued)

CHARLIE
Mostly pirating technology. They’re after our combat, intelligence and weapons systems.

DON
And you think this is how they could be communicating...

CHARLIE
You remember the image of the little girl we found hidden in a photograph?

DAVID
That child porn case...

CHARLIE
This is similar, only more sophisticated. You see this photo, a JPEG photograph of a naked Asian woman.

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
It’s really made up of thousands of pixels which are reproduced as squares.
(to tech)
Could you push in on the upper right quadrant please?

The Tech obeys. We see a squared off image, enlarged and pixilated/squared.

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
Remove some of the squares, you can still see the photo. A coded message can easily be hidden inside the missing information.

DON
Then how do you see it?

CHARLIE
It’s possible for me to develop an algorithm to look for coded messages in the image Kim downloaded.

(off Don)
Think of the tests they give people for color blindness...

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 16 (continued)

NUMBERS 305/42  "The Mole"  2nd WHITE Rev  9-07-06  ZIA.
16 CONTINUED: 16

AUDIENCE VISION -- Begin visual demonstration

A Green Circle made up of mini green circles aka color blind chart.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
To a person who's color blind all they see is a bunch of green dots.

Same image, now a red 2 & appears inside the circle.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
But, to someone whose eyesight is perfect, the same exact image reveals a hidden picture.

RESUME SCENE -- End visual demonstration

DON
You think you can crack this?

CHARLIE
If there’s a message, I should be able to find it.

ON FORM IMAGE.

END SCENE

17 OMITTED

17
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 "The Mole" (Port, 2006b), Scene 26

INT. FBI - WAR ROOM - DAY
Colby walks in, sees David.

DAVID
Any luck on the security videos
from Kim’s apartment building?

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 26 (continued)

COLBY
No. Only cameras were in the lobby. No way to tell which apartment the guests are going to. So far Kim’s always alone.

Charlie appears.

CHARLIE
You know, that might not be true.

COLBY
Charlie, what are you doing here?

CHARLIE
Working on something for Larry...

(Colin)
You said the footage for these cameras is archived, right?

COLBY
Right.

CHARLIE
Well, if the apartment was a meeting place, chances are your mole’s been there more than once.

COLBY
Yeah, but there’s months of footage... hundreds of guests.

CHARLIE
Still we know when Kim was there, right?

DAVID
So?

CHARLIE
So, I can run a series of Eigenfaces.

COLBY
What are Eigenfaces?

CHARLIE
Advanced facial recognition techniques. I’ve been working on a program that matches human asymmetry points...

(MORE)

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 26 (continued)

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
I can create an algorithm that
matches all visitors during the
times we know Kim was in the
apartment.

DAVID
Asymmetry points? C’mom Charlie
help me out here.

CHARLIE
No face is perfectly symmetrical...

Charlie picks the Rubik’s Cube off the desk.

CHARLIE VISION

We see a Rubik’s Cube all mixed up...

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
-- each little square represents a
piece of a symmetry point, nose,
ear or eye.

Each square has a small piece of nose, ear or eye.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
When the right combination is
found... an individual symmetry
point or body part is matched.

The blue side is complete... a whole eye.

RESUME SCENE

DAVID
If playing with Rubik’s Cubes help
us solve this case, then let’s buy
a couple. Wait. Lemme guess. You
already got a whole bunch, right?

Charlie smiles. Megan walks in.

MEGAN
Just heard from LAPD. Chop Shop in
Van Nuys has an SUV, matches the
description of the one that hit our
victim.

Colby and David move...
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole” (Port, 2006b), Scene 43

DON
Carter wouldn’t leave classified
documents in his house. He’d come
here, get the papers and head out.

MEGAN
Right under our noses.

DON
We have the locations for the
meets?

MEGAN
Yeah, but they’re scattered all
over the city.

DON
E-mail the info to Charlie, see
what he can come up with...

INT. CALSOI - CHARLIE’S OFFICE - DAY
Charlie inputs addresses on a computer/LCD screen as he and
Amita talk with Megan.

MEGAN
Don’s afraid Carter’s going to try
to sell whatever information he’s
got, before he leaves the country.

Charlie pops a series of addresses on the screen.

CHARLIE
And these appointments from
Carter’s PDA are meetings between
him and the Chinese?

MEGAN
That’s what we think.

Charlie hits a button, the addresses overlay on a map of LA
County. The points are grouped in an area around downtown.

CHARLIE
All these addresses are within a
couple of miles of the FBI. I’ve
learned from the NSA that
operatives will often arrange
meeting places months in advance.
They’re given a list. Never used
twice.

(continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 43 (continued)

MEGAN
So this pre-arranged place would logically be somewhere inside this circle.

AMITA
Then this is a classic combinatorial optimization problem.

CHARLIE
And nobody’s better at combinatorics than you.

MEGAN
(smiles)
Sounds interesting...

AMITA
It’s really a simple question of branching and bounding.

MEGAN
Branching and bounding?

CHARLIE
Imagine you’re trying to predict how a tree is going to branch...

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION
We see a tree superimposed over a map of Los Angeles.

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
We know where six of the meeting places or “branches” already are...

The oak sprouts three limbs, two branches off each...

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
But the question is, where would the seventh branch or Carter’s next meeting place be?

Several more limbs grow with branches.

RESUME SCENE

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
Certain factors can eliminate potential branches. For example, Carter needs to make a fast and clean get away.

(CONTINUED)
Episode #305 “The Mole”, Scene 43 (continued)

MEGAN
Something near the freeway...

CHARLIE
Which all of these places are.

BACK TO AUDIENCE VISION -- Begin visual demonstration

Two of the new branches disappear...

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
These meetings have taken place in areas zoned for business with an open courtyard, promenade, multiple entrances and exits...

Two more branches disappear...

RESUME SCENE

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
One was Pershing Square, one Staples Center...

MEGAN
They’re all places Carter could easily escape from.

CHARLIE
By running an algorithm that analyzes the features of the existing meeting places to find key variables then applying a branching and bounding algorithm, I can hopefully give you a location for Carter’s next probable destination.

Off image of Disney Hall that takes us to -- End scene

EXT. LOS ANGELES - LATE NIGHT

Disney Hall looms across the street. It’s quiet and empty.

PAN OVER to find Doc’s vantage point.

DAVID (V.O.)
Sinclair for Rppes...

DON
Rppes...

Establish David in front of Disney Hall. Inter cut --

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy” (Heuton & Falacci, 2007), Scene 16

CONTINUED:

The Man takes the papers, walks away.

TUTTLE (CONT'D)
I'll get back to you on that.

DAVID
Do you know a Rachel Lawton?

TUTTLE
Doesn't sound familiar.

COLBY
What kind of business do you do?

Tuttle stretches his back.

TUTTLE
I retired last year.
(off Colby’s look)
I still manage a hedge fund, serve on corporate boards. I'm trying to put more time into public service.

COLBY
Why do you employ statisticians and computer scientists?

TUTTLE
To test stock market systems. I dream about finding that magic formula for striking it rich.

DAVID
Some might say you found it.

COLBY
Quite a lot of it, in fact.

Tuttle eyes them oddly.

TUTTLE
Take it from a guy with more than enough. It's never enough.

EXT. CALSCI -- DAY

Charlie walks with Millie.

MILLIE
Sounds like this Oswald kid bit pretty hard on the FBI hook-

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy”, Scene 16 (continued)

CHARLIE
But he still won’t apply to CalSci. He doesn’t grasp what he could accomplish here. I don’t know how to get that across to him.

MILLIE
Your whole life has been math and science, same for your students. You were raised in the church and you preach to the converted. But now it’s time to convert a heathen.

CHARLIE
He’s one resistant kid.

MILLIE
You work with the FBI. I gotta think that no-neck cops are a tougher audience than a bright skateboarder.

CHARLIE
Hey, my brother’s one of those no-neck cops, and he’s got a neck.

MILLIE
Of course he does -- I’m exaggerating to make a point. You can reach a non-math audience. What’s Oswald’s main objection?

CHARLIE
He thinks he’s not good enough, that all he can do here is fail.

MILLIE
So find a way to show him his potential.

Oswald comes up behind them --

OSWALD
Hey Charlie --?

MILLIE
And if I’m not mistaken --

Oswald joins them --

OSWALD
Charlie, hey, there’s something off about Rachel’s numbers.

(continued)
He hands Charlie a printout -- smiles at Millie --

OSWALD (CONT'D)
Hey, how ya doing.

MILLIE
I'm good. Please, go ahead.

OSWALD
(to Charlie)
I did what you said -- printed them out without the headings to look for patterns. Didn't find any -- but her numbers -- there's still something funny about them, I can't quite put my finger on it.

Charlie's staring at the numbers --

CHARLIE
You're right -- there's too many 7s. And -- 3s.

OSWALD
Too many? Too many for what?

CHARLIE
For this list to be random.

OSWALD
You can tell that just by looking?

CHARLIE
I know what to look for, from financial fraud and tax cases.

MILLIE
For some reason, when most people make up numerical reports, they use too many 3's and 7's. And they don't use enough 1's and 2's.

OSWALD
Really? No, I'd use too many 4's.

MILLIE
Even if you don't know what the numbers describe, you can know somebody's lying about it. And on that note, I have to run.

CHARLIE
Bye, Millie. And thanks.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy”, Scene 16 (continued)

Millie smiles and heads off --

OSWALT
Who’s that? She seems nice.

CHARLIE
Dr. Finch, chair of the math, physics and astronomy division.

OSWALT
Really. But she was, you know --

CHARLIE
-- easy to talk to?

OSWALT
Okay, maybe. But anyway--
(off the data)
How do we find what this is?

CHARLIE
We’ve got math applications that help analyze unlabeled sets of numbers. Items tend to come in groups. In a grocery store, a dozen might mean a dozen eggs, a half dozen would be bagels --

OSWALT
--24 would be a case of beer --

CHARLIE
It’s called metadata -- information about data. For instance, the numbers 1-2-3-4-5 are data.

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION:

Handwritten numerals 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 appear individually and come together against a non-descript background.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
They could refer to anything. But if you find out they’re a zip code--

FULL BACK to reveal it’s on a STAMPED ENVELOPE -- in the area one would find a zip code -- with no sending address.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
They mean something specific. In this case, Schenectady, New York.

ON THE ENVELOPE, a Schenectady, NY address burns in.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy”, Scene 16 (continued)

BACK TO SCENE:

OSWALD
So we use that to figure out what
Rachel’s numbers are talking about--

CHARLIE
And maybe we’ll know why she died.

INT. FBI TECH ROOM -- DAY

Colby and David walk up to Megan, working computer databases.
(Stamped windows of political web sites.)

DAVID
If you want a spooky guy to
mastermind a conspiracy -- J.
Everett Tuttle's your first pick.

MEGAN
What makes you say that?

COLBY
We told him three former employees
died within two weeks -- he didn’t
care, didn’t ask how they died.

MEGAN
Did he express concern for them or
their families?

DAVID
Not at all.

COLBY
The only time he expressed the
slightest interest was when --

MEGAN
-- don’t tell me. When you asked
him about himself.

DAVID
You got that right.

MEGAN
Could be a self-absorbed Type-A
personality. Or -- a sociopath.

DAVID
You got anything new?

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy” (Heuton & Falacci, 2007), Scene 38

STACY
No, not that I’ve heard. And
that’s what’s really scaring me --
she’s never gone this long without
calling Mom and Dad.

Megan looks down at Pico -- who’s watching her.

INT. EPES GARAGE - NIGHT

Don scans boards of organization theory. Charlie watches.
Oswald plays air hockey with Alan.

DON
Can’t be that many possibilities.

CHARLIE
In general, no. There’s
power/control and power/wealth.

OSWALD
Comes down to money. People want
money to get power and people want
power to get money.

ALAN
There are fanatical idealists.

Oswald scores on Alan.

OSWALD
Mercy rule?

ALAN
Must be a Canadian hockey table.

Alan quits in disgust.

DON
If they can rig a county election,
why not a larger one?

CHARLIE
Bigger election, bigger conspiracy.
Too big, it can’t sustain secrecy.
Like Watergate. Or Iran-Contra.

OSWALD
Unless there’s a self-perpetuating
element -- like nanotechnology.

Don and Alan turn to Oswald -- what is he talking about?

(Continued)
OSWALD (CONT'D)
Wait, this is better. You know how they stack champagne glasses and fill them with champagne?

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION:
The classic pyramid of champagne glasses.

OSWALD (V.O.) (CONT'D)
You only pour the champagne into the top glass but it overflows into all the other glasses.

The champagne pours over the top and into the glasses below.

BACK TO SCENE
OSWALD (CONT'D)
Requires resources applied in only one location, but it spreads.

ALAN
(sotto voice)
Good God, another one.

CHARLIE
You mean the conspiracy starts from a single source but can spread.

Alan goes to the board with Jason Brasher's name.

ALAN
That's right, because the supervisors oversee the county budget. They approve everything. Including voting equipment the county buys.

DON
Brasher could make sure the county keeps buying rigged machines.

CHARLIE
And with LA County's huge population, rigged machines here could make the difference in a statewide election.

The four look at each other, realizing the implications.

DON
He's not just after a Supervisor's seat--
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy”, Scene 38 (continued)

CONTINUED:

ALAN
They say, as California goes, so goes the country. This Tuttle -- he wants to be a kingmaker.

INF. FBI ELEVATOR -- NIGHT
Don exits the elevator, David meets him, fills him in on the walk to the bullpen.

DAVID
Megan just got a report back on Tru-Poll Systems, the company that made the electronic voting machines.

DGN
Yeah, what do we got?

David hands him a printout.

DAVID
Tru-Poll recently upgraded the motherboards in all machines in California. Those motherboards are manufactured in Taiwan by a company based here in the states. A company called SDKG Electronics.

They arrive at Megan’s desk.

MEGAN
The interesting part of this -- SDKG was founded by an entrepreneur named Paul Prescott. Two years ago, Tuttle tried to buy out the company. Prescott said no.

DAVID
Then, Prescott died in a rock climbing accident.

DGN
Really. An accident.

DAVID
People who get in Tuttle’s way tend to have them.

DGN
Who owns the electronics firm now?

(Continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy” (Heuton & Falacci, 2007), Scene 45

CONTINUED:

CHARLIE (CONT'D)
She told the FBI "they picked the wrong computer geek to mess with."

OSWALD
Not the -- most threatening statement I've ever heard.

CHARLIE
Her code could be hidden in the machine's legitimate coding,
probably in the operating system.

Oswald goes up to the printout on the board --

OSWALD
So you look for the computer code that -- looks like Jane's.
(looks at the code)
This all looks exactly alike.

CHARLIE
I'll write an algorithm to isolate her code from the rest. You find
Dr. Finch, tell her we need a priority run on the supercomputer.
And be convincing --

OSWALD
Yeah, well, I'll tell her -- the fate of democracy is at stake.

OMITTED

INT. FBI WAR ROOM -- DAY
Charlie with Don, David, Colby. He shows them a motherboard.

CHARLIE
Jane's code is embedded in the operating system on the motherboard
of the Tru-Poll machines-

DAVID
And you can prove that?

CHARLIE
Mathematically incontrovertible.

COLBY
How could rigged machines pass all the testing they went through?

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy”, Scene 45 (continued)

CHARLIE
Think of these voting machines, or any computer for that matter, like a man reading instructions to assemble a model car.

Charlie picks up a piece of paper.

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
Say these are the instructions -- if you wanted the man to build something that was different than a car, the easiest way is to simply rewrite the directions. But --

Charlie slaps the paper down on the table --

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
-- these changed instructions are evidence of tampering. However --

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION:

Instructions to a classic car model. Pieces of plastic, glue.

EYES read the instructions.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
-- if you can alter the operating system -- that is -- if you can alter how the man thinks -- how he interprets the instructions --

EYES read original, correct instructions. But the materials are assembled strangely. It does not look like a car.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (CONT’D)
Left can become right, red is green, up is down--

BACK TO SCENE:

CHARLIE (CONT’D)
The voting machine makes illegal alterations, but since it happened in the operating system, not the software, there’s no evidence.

DAVID
Mess with the operating system, you can make the machine do anything?

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #318 “Democracy”, Scene 45 (continued)

CHARLIE
In this case, it was designed so
the machines only execute the bad
program on election day. After
that, it erases itself.

COLEY
Jane Aliano can testify to this --
long as Tuttle doesn’t get to her.

DON
We need to move her somewhere safe.

EXT. CONSTRUCTION SITE -- DAY

Jane in her hooded sweatshirt, with David and Colby, walking
quickly toward a car. Jane holding her head down.

They pass three MAINTENANCE MEN in work cloths, one working a
JACKHAMMER. Another glances up as they pass.

With David, Colby and Jane as they walk --

A POV COMING UP ON THEM FROM BEHIND

The “Maintenance Men” following, closing the distance --

Suddenly, DARK FIGURES rush from all sides --

Colby and David turn, weapons up --

DAVID
Get on the ground, now!

COLEY
Do it!

FBI SWAT -- assault rifles trained on the “Maintenance Men.”
Each now been holding a SILENCED GUN.


INT. FBI INTERROGATION ROOM -- DAY

Cliff Dawkins across from Don and Meeks. His confidence
gone. He’s pale, distracted.

MEEKS
Mr. Dawkins, we just arrested three
men trying to assassinate Jane
Aliano. They’re Tru-Poll Security.
On your company payroll.

(continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #414 “Checkmate” (Port, 2008a), Scene 15

EXT. FBI TRAINING CENTER - DRIVING TRACK - DAY

Megan and Charlie walk and talk. Cars race around the course behind them.

CHARLIE
How many people had access to the witnesses information?

She hands him a list.

MEGAN
About fifty. Multiply their correspondence, e-mails, makes it more like thousands.

CHARLIE
Remember it’s quality not quantity that counts. In this case, forensic link analysis will prove that.

(off her look) Imagine an uncut diamond...

MEGAN
Not a problem --

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION

Of a large, uncut diamond.

CHARLIE (V.O.)
When a diamond is discovered, it is a large uncut stone...

SOME into the diamond.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Under a microscope, the rock’s flaws and inclusions become visible.

We see the imperfections.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
To maximize your profit… they must be removed by cutting the diamond...

The diamond is cut, falls into four smaller...

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
So the valuable and brilliant facets are revealed...

(CONTINUED)
... and more brilliant pieces.

RESUME SCENE

CHARLIE (cont'd)
Similarly, Temporal Link Analysis searches the e-mails sent by users with access to the sensitive information, removing the bad ones or "flaws" and revealing those that are of value.

MEGAN
Something outside their job parameters.

CHARLIE
Exactly.

In the background the Instructor yells for Charlie --

INSTRUCTOR (B.G.)
Hpipes, you're up --

CHARLIE
I'll call Larry and Amita. They should be able to help out.

He starts to leave...

MEGAN
Charlie -- brake into the turn, accelerate on the way out.

CHARLIE
Thanks --

INT. FBI - INTERROGATION ROOM - DAY

HEAVY sits... across from Don. ND Agent stands in the background.

HEAVY
Watch like that... must make you the man in charge.

DON
I got two dead witnesses who were supposed to testify against your boss.

HEAVY
Bitch and snitch, you wind up in a ditch.

(continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #414 “Checkmate” (Port, 2008a), Scene 24


23 CONTINUED:

DAVID (cont’d)
Two gallons a day... keeps the pipes clean.

ALAN
Oh no, this isn’t for me -- it’s for the toilet.
(off his look)
I’m recycling rain water. The new system can hold up to 1260 liters.
(then)
If you’re looking for Ben --

DAVID
Actually I need --

ALAN
Charlie. Nope, can’t help you there either.

DAVID
You.

ALAN
Me?

DAVID
How long does it take to learn to play chess?

ALAN
Years to get competitive...

DAVID
I have this afternoon.

ALAN
(puts water down)
Then we’re talking about speed chess. Better get going.

INT. FBI - GYM - DAY

An FBI Agent, LEX, 20’s and buff, flips another AGENT during a gun take away. Ten FBI AGENTS including Charlie, watch -- all dressed in sweats. Instructor PAUL teaches the class. Behind them are several strike cummies.

PAUL
Alright Pees, you’re up. Prisoner escort...

Charlie, pure fear in his eyes, steps up and grabs Lex by the arm.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #414 “Checkmate”, Scene 24 (continued)


CONTINUED: 24

Go --

PAUL (cont’d)

Charlie barely has time to blink before Lex is on him -- and
flips Charlie to the mat hard. The class lets out a
collective groan. Lex smiles and struts away.

ON CHARLIE - as he looks up through the blurry light and sees
Don extending his hand.

DON
C’mon bro, walk it off.

Don helps Charlie up... the class continues behind them as
they walk to the side. Charlie tries his best to suck it up.

CHARLIE
This is good. Things are going
really well.

DON
I can see that.

Don hands Charlie the partial photo of the mountain range.

DON (cont’d)
Think you can dial us into the
location?

CHARLIE
{rubs his head}

Supervised Multiclass Labeling.

Imagine a cadaver dog searching for
a body...

ENTER AUDIENCE VISION

Bloodhound tracks through the woods.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)

If you show the dog a photo of the
subject, it’s useless.

Dog stares at the photo of the missing person (man), tries to
eat the picture.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Give him a piece of clothing,
though, and the dog keys off the
scent.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #414 “Checkmate”, Scene 24 (continued)


24 CONTINUED: (2) 24

**Hound sniffs a shirt and takes off like a bat out of hell...**

**CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)**
The SNL algorithm looks for its own information or scent...

Our photo appears, above it are a series of numbers... Dog next to it.

**CHARLIE (cont’d)**
-- by scanning millions of images on the internet to look for a match...

Above that a second row of numbers cycle through.... when it finds a match, the dog starts barking.

**RESUME SCENE**

**DON**
So...

**CHARLIE**
I’ll call Amita and Larry... again.

They walk back... Lex waits for Charlie --

**CHARLIE (cont’d)**
Could use some brotherly advice here --

**DON**
Go to shake his hand -- then, kick him in the nuts.

Charlie smiles --

**CHARLIE**
That’s the same advice you gave me in elementary school.

**DON**
Don’t fix what’s not broken --

End scene

25 **INT. EPPES HOUSE - DINING ROOM - DAY** 25

Alan and David sit and play chess. David takes notes.

**ALAN**
This tactic is called a “pin.”
(then)
Who’s your adversary anyway?

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #414 “Checkmate” (Port, 2008a), Scene 40


The target moves back... Charlie pulls it off -- hands it to Stephen who takes it and stares at the target incredulously.

He counts the rounds... then, recounts it.

STEPHEN (cont’d)
I can’t believe it...
(looks up)
290, high score.

Charlie tries to control his pleasure --

STEPHEN (cont’d)
How’d you do it... some kind of crazy math formula or something?

CHARLIE
(recites)
“Fast is fine but accuracy is final. You need to learn to be slow in a hurry.”
(beat)
Wyatt Earp...

Charlie slides and locks his gun, presents it to Stephen --

40 INT. CALSCI – CHARLIE’S OFFICE – NIGHT

-- where Megan finds Larry and Amita working on their Higgs Boson project.

MEGAN
Glad you guys are here... are you busy?

LARRY
Just trying to find the existence of a massive scalar elementary particle predicted to exist by the standard model of particle physics.

MEGAN
Cool, once you’re done I was hoping you could take a look at this --

She hands Larry a file... Amita and Larry read.

AMITA
A list of murder victims...

LARRY
Who’s J-Light?

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #414 “Checkmate”, Scene 40 (continued)

MEGAN
The man who made the list and ordered the hits from jail.

LARRY
He must have been monitored.

Megan hands Amita a DVD -- she places it in her laptop.

MEGAN
He is, which means he’s using some kind of code.

LAPTOP - shows surveillance footage from jail. J-Light and Bishop playing chess.

MEGAN (cont’d)
David thinks J-Light’s passing messages through this kid while he teaches him chess lessons.

AMITA
The beautiful thing about chess is that both opponents know everything. Nothing is hidden.

LARRY
So within the lessons, perhaps lies the coded message.

MEGAN
If it’s true, can you crack it?

LARRY
Normally we’d need the cipher but --

AMITA
In this case we have the victims’ names or the results. So by using backwards induction, we might be able to work backwards and crack it.

(off Megan’s look)
It’s like the Rosetta Stone...

Amita draws three horizontal lines on the chalk board.

AMITA (cont’d)
... the exact same text is written in three different languages.

And writes the phrase, “Everything Is Numbers,” in English, French and Hindu.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode #414 “Checkmate”, Scene 40 (continued)


40 CONTINUED: (2) 40

AMITA (cont’d)
If you can understand just one...
She circles the French word Nombres...

AMITA (cont’d)
You’ll be able to read the other two.

-- and the Hindi word for Numbers (note: Matt will write).

AMITA (cont’d)
My algorithm will be looking for
overlaps between the sets of data
-- the victims and the chess
lessons.
(beat)
Then, translate the unknown code by
comparing it to the known murders
and their gang affiliations.

41 INT. RITZ CARLTON - SUITE - LIVING ROOM - NIGHT 41

-- Don (new clothes) finishes putting the touches on a
beautiful candlelight dinner he has laid out.

DON
Dinner’s ready...

Robin is in the other room.

ROBIN (O.S.)
Coming...

She walks in... clearly surprised to see what Don has
arranged.

Don gets up, pulls out her chair --

DON
Like you said... we talked about
spending a weekend in a place like
this...

-- crosses over and sits down.

ROBIN
Have to get the number of your
shrink... and thank him.

He pulls out a little present, bow tied around it.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 509 “Conspiracy Theory” (Port, 2008b), Scene 29


28 CONTINUED:

COLBY
Except the break-in of David's car
doesn't fit.

LIZ
Where were you guys prior to that?

COLBY
We arrested McGill.

LIZ
You took him in?

COLBY
No, we called a unit -- didn't want
to waste time processing the guy.
Don wanted us to toss his house.

LIZ
So any evidence that you collected
from McGill's documentary would
have been in David's car...

COLBY
There wasn't anything new there.
Just old footage of Hanson...

LIZ
A burglar wouldn't have known
that...

COLBY
They're after the video tape --

OFF Colby --

29 INT. FBI - WAR ROOM - DAY

Liz, Colby and Robin, ON SCREENS -- footage of the California
Pacific Club bombing.

ROBIN
For a guy in charge, Hanson hasn't
gotten us very far with the GEO
guest list...
(hands file)
On the other hand, McGill may not
be so crazy -- okay he is crazy,
but it doesn't mean he's wrong.
I've managed to ID nineteen members
off anti-GEO websites.

(continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 509 “Conspiracy Theory”, Scene 29 (continued)


29 CONTINUED:  29

LIZ
Look at the company profiles...
Between their factories they're
exploiting half the children in
China.

Charlie walks in...

COLEBY
Charlie -- where did you keep your
work on McGill?

Pulls laptop out of his knapsack --

CHARLIE
My laptop of course... the
processing speed for the algorithm
was relatively low and --

COLEBY
You had it with you last night?

CHARLIE
You think that's what the burglar
was after? The video...

ON SCREEN -- McGill's last video plays (digital squares)...

LIZ
Must have watched it ten times
before it was destroyed... just the
backs of a bunch of guys' heads and
Hanson talking about falling yen.

COLEBY
Let's say the same guy who set the
bombs orchestrated the break-ins...
he finds out we have the tape,
wants to make sure we can't ID him.

CHARLIE
Suggesting the burglar and the
bomber are one and the same...

LIZ
Except... David said the bombs were
purely amateur hour -- and these
break-ins were all high-end jobs...

CHARLIE
Suggesting the burglar and the
bomber aren't one and the same...

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 509 “Conspiracy Theory”, Scene 29 (continued)

COLBY
-- which does mean someone in the GEO wants to make sure his identity remains a secret.

CHARLIE
Who's got the most to lose?

ROBIN
We don't know yet...

CHARLIE
Or you might -- think of Simpson's...\n
COLBY
I love that show...

Takes a marker... writes STATS on a piece paper.

CHARLIE
Not Homer... Edward. David Justice had a better batting average in both of these years than Derek Jeter... but combine them and Jeter beats him by forty points.

ROBIN
Still doesn't mean Jeter's the better hitter for either year.

CHARLIE
Exactly... go with what you know -- not what you don't.

LIZ
The guy we can identify... Hanson.

COLBY
He's the front man for the group. These people were in his house.

LIZ
Some pretty powerful dudes on this list...

ROBIN
And who knows what they'd do to Hanson if that tape gets out --

OFF image of Hanson --
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 509 “Conspiracy Theory” (Port, 2008b), Scene 41


ACT FOUR

40 INT. FBI - HALLWAY - DAY

David, holds file, and Charlie head toward the war room...

DAVID
-- I'm just saying it's not that big of a deal...

CHARLIE
I guess...

DAVID
Look at your brother -- man dated an ATF Agent, FBI Agent and an A.D.A. Three women, all strapping guns... sleep with that.

As they walk into --

41 INT. FBI - WAR ROOM - DAY

Colby looks at crime scene photos of Jonze. Next to it are NOT PHOTOS of his fleeing KILLER ($SHADOW). David and Charlie enter.

COLBY
A shadow... that's all we have --
It's like looking at a comic book.

DAVID
Lab results are back... bomb residue all over Jonze apartment,
and under his fingernails.

Colby clicks on screen... CASHIERS CHECK.

COLBY
ERT found this in his apartment.
Fifty grand...

DAVID
Guess his reasons for bombing were financial, not political. And Jonze's background gave him the perfect cover.

COLBY
Don't say it...

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 509 “Conspiracy Theory”, Scene 41 (continued)

DAVID
He was a patsy.
(then)
Any prints?

ON SCREEN -- blown up image of the check... w/ two prints.
Check is made out to Jeff Jones. Bank name is golden Bear
Mutual.

COLBY
Pulled two sets, both latent. One
is Jones... other no go.

CHARLIE
You know fingerprints can reveal
more than just an individual
identity. They can show what he
touched -- anyone have matches?

David tosses him a box from his pocket -- Charlie catches --

CHARLIE (cont'd)
 nabesorption electrolytic ionization...
     (Strikes the match)
Any substance, heated enough, will
emit unique spectral lines in a
specific color...

CLOSE ON -- burning match... as it EXPLODES INTO A BURST OF
WHITE... ZOOM IN as it ERUPTS --

AUENDIENCE VISI
Begin visual demonstration

 -- into a fireworks display...

CHARLIE (cont'd)
-- For instance, a fireworks display...

A FLASH of fireworks... Charlie stands in front of the Statue
of Liberty...

CHARLIE (cont'd)
Where every explosive has a signature
display and color pattern...

More fireworks go off... WIPE TO: Charlie standing in front
of the Washington Monument --

CHARLIE (cont'd)
The Crossette contains several
large silver and gold stars...

(continued)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 509 “Conspiracy Theory”, Scene 41 (continued)


41 CONTINUED: (2) 41

OFF the burst of the Crossette... WIDE TO: Charlie in front of the St. Louis Arch...

CHARLIE (cont'd)
The Kamuro is a dense burst that leaves a heavy red glitter trail...

Charlie holds up his index finger... ZOOM INTO --

CHARLIE (cont'd)
Each substance that is present on a human fingerprint also burns at a specific color temperature...

Bursts of fireworks erupt from EXTREME CU of a FINGERTIP.

CHARLIE (cont'd)
Revealing its chemical property -- i.e. acetate, mercury, water...

OFF glitter trail REVEAL --

RESUME SCENE

CHARLIE (cont'd)
I can run the print through CalSci's mass spectrometer and compare the results to EPA reports... look for chemical matches based on geography.

DAVID
Narrow down where this guy lives.

COLBY
How come we don't have one of these machines?

CHARLIE
You do... but you need a mathematician to do the work.

42 INT. FBI - TECH ROOM - NIGHT 42

Liz sits with a TECH who composites (Identikit) Jonze's killer i.e. "The Shadow" on the computer.

LIZ
-- higher check bone.

McGill walks in with Colby --

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 608 “Ultimatum” (Port, 2009), Scene 44

**ACT THREE**

**INT. FBI - TECH ROOM - NIGHT**

Don, Nikki and Charlie look at Garcia’s file on screen.

**CHARLIE**
Edgerton seems pretty confident that Garcia’s still in the system.

**DON**
Let me see the report on his escape.

Nikki clicks on an evidence photo of Garcia’s cut wristband.

**NIKKI**
Marshals found this on the exercise yard. Did a cell check ten minutes later, Garcia was gone.

**DON**
Any proof he actually left?

Nikki clicks on video showing civilians exiting the prison.

**NIKKI**
This video shows visitors exiting the jail before it was locked down.

Three people turn their faces away from the camera.

**NIKKI (cont’d)**
Two have been cleared. Marshals think this --
(clicks on one)
Is Garcia. His pants are too short. They figure he got clothes from his lawyer but the size was off.

**DON**
(notices something)
Pause it. Garcia’s listed as right handed. This guy’s reaching for the door with his left.

**NIKKI**
(turns to Charlie)
Okay Charlie, you’re looking at six thousand prisoners.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 608 “Ultimatum”, Scene 44 (continued)

44 CONTINUED:

CHARLIE
Maybe not. Garcia lived in a specific cell, which means he was only exposed to a portion of the jail population each day.

DON
You’re still talking about a thousand people. We don’t have time to interview them all.

CHARLIE
With Longitudinal Socializing Analysis, we might not have to. Detention facilities are a breeding ground for criminal enterprises.

NIKKI
And that’s going to help us --

CHARLIE
Think of the TV show “Survivor.”

AUDIENCE VISION
We see footage of contestants on Surviv or.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Every contestant is assigned to a tribe. During the course of the game, players compete in contests called challenges.

We see players competing in an obstacle course.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Players must use their individual skills in order for their team to succeed. If they do, the tribe succeeds.

Footage of a tribal counsel.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
And when they go to the tribal counsel, if contestants have built their alliances correctly, they’ll “Survive.”

Inside jail prisoners walk down a hallway.

(CONTINUED)
Appendix B (continued)

Episode 608 “Ultimatum”, Scene 44 (continued)

NUMB3RS-608/110: “Ultimatum” - Rev. Green - 10/14/09

44 CONTINUED: (2)

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
Jails aren’t that much different.
The networks that are established
in prisons offer significant
financial and logistical resources
to criminals.

Prisoners start pairing off.

CHARLIE (V.O.) (cont’d)
The petty thief blends his skills
with the gun runner. The accountant
who embezzled millions allies with
the drug kingpin who can launder
his money.

RESUME SCENE

CHARLIE (cont’d)
Longitudinal Socializing Process
looks for the most beneficial
patterns and relationships.

NIKKI
Who Garcia would’ve had to build
alliances with in order to
“Survive” being whacked by Salazar.

CHARLIE
I can run the data and narrow down
possible matches but Don, I’ll need
your help analyzing the final
candidates.

45 INT. L.A. FEDERAL PENITENTIARY - D9-33 - NIGHT

Edgerton kicks a vending machine. A candy bar falls down.

EDGERTON
(takes a bite)
Stale.

COLBY
I know how you can get a hot pizza.

EDGERTON
Sorry, you’re worth a little more
to me than that.
(than)
I could’ve gone for Eppes. But you
know what it’s like.

(CONTINUED)
VITA

Michelle Louise Simms received her Bachelor of Science degree in geography from Texas A&M University in 1991 followed by a Master of Agriculture in natural resources development in 1995. Returning to Texas A&M, she obtained a Master of Science in geography specializing in geographic education in May 2007 and a Ph.D. in May 2011. Her research interests include informal and non-formal education, especially Entertainment-Education, and geography education. She plans to pursue the development of entertainment products that educate through film, television, and new media as a writer/producer.

Dr. Simms may be reached at the Department of Teaching, Learning, & Culture, 4232 TAMU, College Station, Texas 77843-4232 or by email at msimms@tamu.edu.